

# User's Guide



Microsoft **MS-DOS** **UPGRADE**  
*Operating System*



# MICROSOFT LICENSE AGREEMENT

## IMPORTANT—READ CAREFULLY BEFORE OPENING SOFTWARE PACKET(S).

Unless a separate multilingual license booklet is included in your product package, the following License Agreement applies to you. By opening the sealed packet(s) containing the software, you indicate your acceptance of the following Microsoft License Agreement.

---

### NOTICE

If this documentation has been acquired by you unaccompanied by software, the following license agreement does not apply. It is a reprint of the license agreement which governs use of the software described in this documentation.

---

### SINGLE-USER PRODUCTS

This is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or an entity) and Microsoft Corporation. By opening the sealed software packages and/or by using the SOFTWARE you agree to be bound by the terms of this Agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this Agreement, promptly return the unopened software packet(s) and the accompanying items (including printed materials and binders or other containers) to the place from which you obtained them for a full refund.

---

### MICROSOFT SOFTWARE LICENSE

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. This License Agreement (the "Agreement") permits you to use one copy of the enclosed Microsoft software program, which may include "online" or electronic documentation (the "SOFTWARE") on a single computer. The SOFTWARE is in "use" on a computer when it is loaded into temporary memory (i.e., RAM) or installed into permanent memory (e.g., hard disk, CD-ROM, or other storage device) of that computer. However, installation on a network server for the sole purpose of internal distribution shall not constitute "use" for which a separate license is required, provided you have a separate license for each computer to which the SOFTWARE is distributed.
2. UPGRADES. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade you may use or transfer the SOFTWARE only in conjunction with the prior version(s) of the SOFTWARE.
3. COPYRIGHT. The SOFTWARE (including any images, "applers," photographs, animations, video, audio, music, and text incorporated into the SOFTWARE) is owned by Microsoft or its suppliers and is protected by United States copyright laws and international treaty provisions. Therefore, you must treat the SOFTWARE like any other copyrighted material (e.g., a book or musical recording) except that you may either (a) make one copy of the SOFTWARE solely for backup or archival purposes, or (b) transfer the SOFTWARE to a single hard disk provided you keep the original solely for backup or archival purposes. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE.
4. OTHER RESTRICTIONS. You may not rent or lease the SOFTWARE, but you may transfer the SOFTWARE and accompanying written materials on a permanent basis provided you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this Agreement. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include the most recent upgrade and all prior versions. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except to the extent such foregoing restriction is expressly prohibited by applicable law.
5. DUAL-MEDIA SOFTWARE. You may receive the SOFTWARE in more than one medium. Regardless of the type or size of medium you receive, you may use only the medium appropriate for your single-user computer. You may not use the other medium on another computer or loan, rent, lease, or transfer the disks to another user except as part of the permanent transfer (as provided above) of all SOFTWARE and printed materials, nor print copies of any user documentation provided in "online" or electronic form.
6. LANGUAGE SOFTWARE. If the SOFTWARE is a Microsoft language product, then you have a royalty-free right to reproduce and distribute executable files created using the SOFTWARE. If the language product is a Basic or COBOL product, then Microsoft grants you a royalty-free right to reproduce and distribute the run-time modules of the SOFTWARE provided that you: (a) distribute the run-time modules only in conjunction with and as a part of your software product; (b) do not use Microsoft's name, logo, or trademark to market your software product; (c) include a valid copyright notice on your software product; and (d) agree to indemnify, hold harmless, and defend Microsoft and its suppliers from and against any claims or lawsuits, including attorney's fees, that arise or result from the use or distribution of your software product. The "run-time modules" are those files in the SOFTWARE that are identified in the accompanying printed materials as required during execution of your software program. The run-time modules are limited to run-time files, and ISAM and REBUILD files. If required in the SOFTWARE documentation, you agree to display the designated patent notices on the packaging and in the README file of your software product.

---

### U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS

The SOFTWARE and documentation are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 or subparagraphs (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software—Restricted Rights at 48 CFR 52.227-19, as applicable. Manufacturer is Microsoft Corporation/One Microsoft Way/Redmond, WA 98052-6399.

If you acquired this product in the United States, this Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of Washington.

If you acquired this product in Canada, this Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario, Canada. Each of the parties hereto irrevocably attorns to the jurisdiction of the courts of the Province of Ontario and further agrees to commence any litigation which may arise hereunder in the courts located in the Judicial District of York, Province of Ontario.

If this product was acquired outside the United States, then local law may apply.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Microsoft for any reason, please contact the Microsoft subsidiary serving your country, or write: Microsoft Sales Information Center/One Microsoft Way/Redmond, WA 98052-6399.

FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY PERTAINING TO YOUR COUNTRY, PLEASE REFER TO APPENDIX F.

# User's Guide

## **Microsoft® MS-DOS® 6.22**

**For the MS-DOS Operating System**

**Microsoft Corporation**



Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names, and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Microsoft Corporation.

©1994 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

Microsoft Defragmenter © 1988-1993 Symantec Corporation  
Microsoft Backup © 1991-1993 Symantec Corporation and Quest Development Corporation  
Microsoft Undelete © 1988-1993 Central Point Software, Inc.  
MSAV © 1992-1993 Central Point Software, Inc.

Microsoft, Microsoft Press, MS, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks, and Windows and DriveSpace are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States of America and other countries.

U.S. Patent Numbers 4955066 and 5109433

Adaptec is a trademark of Adaptec, Inc.  
AddStor is a registered trademark and SuperStor is a trademark of AddStor, Inc.  
AT&T is a registered trademark of American Telephone and Telegraph Company.  
CompuAdd is a registered trademark of CompuAdd Corporation.  
CompuServe is a registered trademark of CompuServe, Inc.  
Everex is a trademark of Everex Systems, Inc.  
GEnie is a trademark of General Electric Corporation.  
Vfeature is a trademark of Golden Bow Systems.  
Hewlett-Packard, HP, and Vectra are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.  
Hitachi is a registered trademark of Hitachi, Ltd.  
AT, IBM, Proprinter, PS/1, PS/2, and Quietwriter are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.  
Bernoulli is a registered trademark of Iomega Corporation.  
Logitech is a trademark of Logitech, Inc.  
Novell is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.  
Disk Manager is a registered trademark of Ontrack Computer Systems, Inc.  
Philips is a registered trademark of Philips International B.V.  
Priam is a registered trademark of Priam Corporation.  
SpeedStor is a registered trademark of Storage Dimensions.  
Symantec and Norton Backup are trademarks of Symantec Corporation.  
Syquest is a registered trademark of Syquest Technology.  
UNIX is a registered trademark of UNIX Systems Laboratories.

# Contents

<b>Welcome</b> .....	<b>xi</b>
About Your MS-DOS Documentation .....	xi
New Features of MS-DOS .....	xii
Conventions .....	xvi
Document Conventions .....	xvi
Keyboard Conventions .....	xvi
Microsoft Support Services .....	xvii
Product Support Within the United States .....	xvii
Product Support Worldwide .....	xix
<b>Chapter 1 Getting Started</b> .....	<b>1</b>
Upgrading from an Earlier Version of DOS .....	1
Before You Upgrade MS-DOS .....	1
Running Setup .....	3
Installing Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete After Setup .....	4
Upgrading from OS/2 to MS-DOS .....	5
If You Have Neither OS/2 Dual Boot Nor OS/2 Boot Manager .....	5
If You Have OS/2 Dual Boot with DOS or OS/2 Boot Manager with DOS ..	6
If You Have OS/2 Boot Manager Without DOS .....	8
<b>Chapter 2 MS-DOS Basics</b> .....	<b>11</b>
Learning MS-DOS Basics—A Tutorial .....	11
The Command Prompt .....	12
Typing a Command .....	12
Viewing the Contents of a Directory .....	13
Changing Directories .....	14
Changing Back to the Root Directory .....	16
Creating a Directory .....	16
Deleting a Directory .....	18
Changing Drives .....	19
Copying Files .....	21
Renaming Files .....	25
Deleting Files .....	27
Formatting a Floppy Disk .....	29
Summary .....	30



How MS-DOS Organizes Information. . . . .	31
Files . . . . .	31
Directories. . . . .	31
Drives. . . . .	33
Using Paths to Specify the Location of Files. . . . .	34
Naming Files and Directories . . . . .	35
Using Extensions . . . . .	36
Using Wildcards . . . . .	36
Getting Help . . . . .	37
Using MS-DOS Help . . . . .	38
Using Command Line Help . . . . .	40
<b>Chapter 3 Managing Your System. . . . .</b>	<b>41</b>
Backing Up Your Files . . . . .	42
Overview of Backup. . . . .	42
Ensuring a Reliable Backup . . . . .	48
Using Backup . . . . .	49
Running the Compatibility Test . . . . .	53
Configuring Backup. . . . .	55
Comparing Files . . . . .	58
Restoring Files . . . . .	59
If the “DMA buffer size too small” Message Appears . . . . .	61
Protecting Your Computer from Viruses. . . . .	62
What Are Computer Viruses? . . . . .	62
Anti-Virus Help . . . . .	63
Scanning for Viruses . . . . .	63
Automatically Scanning for Viruses. . . . .	67
Setting Anti-Virus Options . . . . .	68
Getting Information About Viruses . . . . .	68
Using VSafe . . . . .	70
Troubleshooting Anti-Virus . . . . .	73
Using SMARTDrive . . . . .	79
Using the Defragmenter. . . . .	80
Recovering Deleted Files . . . . .	81
Configuring Delete Protection. . . . .	81
Undelete for Windows . . . . .	82
Undelete for MS-DOS . . . . .	86

---

<b>Chapter 4 Configuring Your System</b> .....	<b>89</b>
Using CONFIG.SYS Commands to Configure Your System .....	90
Editing Your CONFIG.SYS File .....	90
CONFIG.SYS Commands .....	91
Configuring Hardware Devices .....	93
Determining the Order of CONFIG.SYS Commands .....	95
Sample CONFIG.SYS Files .....	96
Specifying Startup Commands in Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File .....	97
Editing Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File .....	97
AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands .....	98
Sample AUTOEXEC.BAT Files .....	99
Bypassing CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands .....	101
Completely Bypassing Your Startup Files .....	101
Confirming Each Startup Command .....	102
Using Multiple Configurations .....	103
Overview of Procedures .....	103
Defining a Startup Menu .....	105
Defining Configuration Blocks .....	106
Modifying Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File for Multiple Configurations .....	109
<b>Chapter 5 Freeing Disk Space</b> .....	<b>111</b>
Deleting Unnecessary Files .....	112
Using ScanDisk to Free Disk Space .....	115
<b>Chapter 6 Making More Memory Available</b> .....	<b>117</b>
Identifying Your Computer's Memory Configuration .....	117
Freeing Conventional Memory .....	119
Optimizing Memory by Using MemMaker .....	120
Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files .....	142
Running MS-DOS in the High Memory Area .....	143
Freeing Extended Memory .....	144
Freeing Expanded Memory .....	145
Using MS-DOS Memory Managers .....	146
Using the EMM386 Memory Manager .....	147



<b>Chapter 7   Features for Your Laptop Computer</b> .....	<b>149</b>
Using Interlnk to Connect Two Computers .....	149
What You Need to Use Interlnk .....	151
Establishing a Connection Between Computers .....	153
Breaking the Connection Between Computers .....	153
Using the Remote Copy Procedure .....	153
Conserving Power on Your Laptop Computer .....	154
 <b>Chapter 8   Diagnosing and Solving Problems</b> .....	 <b>157</b>
Troubleshooting During Setup .....	158
Making a Startup Disk .....	158
Using the Uninstall Disk .....	158
Setup stops before MS-DOS has been completely installed. ....	160
Setup screens are unreadable. ....	162
Setup displays the “There is not enough free space on drive C to install MS-DOS” screen. ....	162
Setup displays the “Your computer uses a disk-compression program” screen. ....	164
Setup displays the “Your computer uses a disk-compression program and does not have enough free disk space to set up MS-DOS” screen. ....	164
Setup displays the “Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” screen. ....	165
Setup displays the “Your computer uses a disk-compression program and has run out of disk space” screen. ....	166
Setup displays the “Your computer uses password protection” screen. ....	167
Setup displays the “Your computer is using an incompatible delete- protection program” screen. ....	167
Setup displays the “Cannot find a hard disk on your computer” screen. ...	168
Setup displays the “Too Many Primary Partitions” or “Incompatible Primary DOS Partition” screen. ....	168
Setup displays the “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” screen. ....	168
Setup displays the “Incompatible partition” screen. ....	170
Setup repeatedly prompts you for the Uninstall disk. ....	170
Setup displays the “Root directory of your hard disk contains some of your original DOS files” screen. ....	172
Setup reports that your computer does not have enough available space to install the selected programs. ....	173
You need to copy Setup files directly to your computer. ....	175
You need to install MS-DOS manually. ....	176
MS-DOS won’t start after you run Setup. ....	177

Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk . . . . .	184
Configuring Your Hard Disk . . . . .	185
Troubleshooting While Running MS-DOS . . . . .	196
A message states that HIMEM.SYS is missing or not loaded. . . . .	197
You installed a hardware device, and your computer stopped working correctly. . . . .	200
You need to restore files you backed up by using a backup program from an earlier version of MS-DOS . . . . .	202
An MS-DOS-based program displays an out-of-memory message. . . . .	202
<b>Chapter 9 Customizing for International Use . . . . .</b>	<b>205</b>
Changing Country-Specific Conventions . . . . .	206
Changing the Keyboard Layout . . . . .	206
Changing Character Sets. . . . .	207
An Overview of the Procedures for Changing Character Sets. . . . .	209
Preparing Your Monitor for Character Sets. . . . .	210
Loading National Language Support for Character Sets . . . . .	211
Loading a Character Set into Memory . . . . .	211
Making a Character Set Active. . . . .	212
Viewing Information About Character Sets . . . . .	213
Country, Keyboard, and Character Set Codes . . . . .	214
Configuring Your Computer for International Use . . . . .	216
Example: Changing All Your Country-Specific Settings. . . . .	216
Explanation of Error Messages . . . . .	218
You receive the “Code page specified has not been prepared” message. . . . .	218
You receive the “Invalid code page” message. . . . .	219
You receive the “Code page operation not supported on this device” message. . . . .	219
You receive the “Code page number not prepared for all devices” message. . . . .	219
You receive the “Failure to access code page font file” message. . . . .	220
You receive the “Font file contents invalid” message. . . . .	220
You receive the “Device error during prepare” message. . . . .	220
<b>Appendix A Summary of MS-DOS Commands . . . . .</b>	<b>221</b>
MS-DOS Commands. . . . .	221
Device Drivers . . . . .	230
Commands That Cannot Be Used with Windows . . . . .	231
Commands Used in CONFIG.SYS Files. . . . .	231
Commands Used in Batch Programs . . . . .	231
Commands Used to Change International Settings . . . . .	232



<b>Appendix B Accessibility to MS-DOS for Individuals with Disabilities . . . . .</b>	<b>233</b>
Support Services for Individuals Who Are Deaf or Hard-of-Hearing . . . . .	233
AccessDOS Features . . . . .	234
Keyboard Layouts for Single-Handed Users . . . . .	235
Documentation on Audio Cassettes and Floppy Disks . . . . .	236
Getting More Information About Products and Services . . . . .	237
 <b>Appendix C Keyboard Layouts and Character Sets . . . . .</b>	 <b>239</b>
Keyboard Layouts . . . . .	239
Using Keys That Have More Than Two Characters on Them . . . . .	246
Creating Accented Characters on a Brazilian Keyboard . . . . .	246
Character Set (Code Page) Tables . . . . .	247
 <b>Appendix D Obtaining New Virus Signatures . . . . .</b>	 <b>255</b>
Updating Your Virus Signatures . . . . .	255
 <b>Appendix E Freeing Disk Space by Using DriveSpace . . . . .</b>	 <b>259</b>
Getting Help . . . . .	259
Setting Up DriveSpace . . . . .	260
Using Express Setup . . . . .	260
Using Custom Setup . . . . .	262
Understanding Disk Compression . . . . .	265
Compressed Volume Files and Host Drives . . . . .	265
How DriveSpace Calculates Free Space on a Compressed Drive . . . . .	266
Using DriveSpace to Manage Compressed Drives . . . . .	267
Compressing Additional Drives . . . . .	270
Compressing an Existing Drive . . . . .	270
Creating a New Compressed Drive . . . . .	271
Using DriveSpace with Floppy Disks . . . . .	272
Compressing a Floppy Disk . . . . .	272
Using a Compressed Floppy Disk . . . . .	273
Getting Information About Compressed Drives . . . . .	275
Understanding DriveSpace and Memory . . . . .	275
Getting More Information About DriveSpace . . . . .	276
Troubleshooting DriveSpace . . . . .	277

Appendix F Limited Warranties .....	279
Index .....	299
Coupon for Low-Density Setup Disks	
Coupon for the Resource Kit and Supplemental Disks	
Coupon for Anti-Virus Updates	



# Welcome

Welcome to Microsoft® MS-DOS®, the most widely used operating system for personal computers. This version of MS-DOS includes many new features that turn your computer into a powerful tool for business or personal use. These features are described in detail later in this introduction.

If this version of MS-DOS is not yet set up on your computer, see the chapter “Getting Started” for information about how to use the Setup program.

This introduction to the *Microsoft MS-DOS User’s Guide* includes a list of the printed and online documentation included with MS-DOS, an introduction to new and improved MS-DOS features, a list of the typographic conventions used in this guide, and information about how to get product support.

## About Your MS-DOS Documentation

MS-DOS documentation consists of the *Microsoft MS-DOS User’s Guide*, MS-DOS Help, and several other online documents.

This guide includes information for users who have little experience with computers, in addition to advanced topics for those who are familiar with MS-DOS. You can use the detailed table of contents and index to find information about the features you work with most often.

MS-DOS Help is a comprehensive online reference to MS-DOS commands. The reference includes information about how to type commands and their parameters and switches, notes about commands, and examples of how to use commands.

After you’ve set up the latest version of MS-DOS on your computer, you can display the MS-DOS Help table of contents by typing **help** at the command prompt and then pressing ENTER. You can also get information about a command without displaying the table of contents. For example, to display information about the **copy** command, type **help copy** at the command prompt.

For more information about using MS-DOS Help, see the chapter “MS-DOS Basics.”

When you install this version of MS-DOS, Setup copies to your hard disk two online documents that contain information that was unavailable when this guide was printed. You can read (and print) the documents by using any text editor.



After you set up this version of MS-DOS, you will find the following files in the directory that contains your MS-DOS files:

- The README.TXT file, which provides information about how MS-DOS interacts with certain types of hardware and software.
- The NETWORKS.TXT file, which provides information about making your network compatible with this version of MS-DOS.

## New Features of MS-DOS

If you have used earlier versions of MS-DOS, you will find many improvements in this version. These improvements include new commands and programs that make using your computer easier and more efficient.

This version of MS-DOS includes the following new or improved features:

- Microsoft DriveSpace, integrated disk compression that increases your available disk space by compressing files. DriveSpace appears similar to DoubleSpace, which was included with some earlier versions of MS-DOS; however, DriveSpace stores compressed information in a different format. For more information about DriveSpace, see the appendix “Freeing Disk Space by Using DriveSpace.” (If you are currently using DoubleSpace, type **help dblspace** at the MS-DOS command prompt for information about using DoubleSpace with MS-DOS 6.22.)
- ScanDisk, a new utility that detects, diagnoses, and repairs disk errors. ScanDisk can repair file system errors (such as crosslinks and lost clusters) in addition to physical disk errors. ScanDisk keeps a log of its repairs and enables you to undo any of the changes it made. For more information, type **help scandisk** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- Microsoft MemMaker, a memory-optimization program that makes it easy to free conventional memory by moving device drivers and memory-resident programs from conventional memory into the upper memory area. If your computer has an 80386 or higher processor, you can use MemMaker to maximize available conventional memory so that programs run faster and more efficiently. For more information about using MemMaker, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available.”
- An enhanced EMM386 device driver that provides access to more upper memory blocks and uses extended memory to simulate expanded memory as needed, without requiring you to change configuration commands or restart your computer. For more information, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available.”

- An enhanced **mem** command that provides more information about the memory your computer is using and the programs that are loaded in memory. For more information, type **help mem** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- Enhanced **loadhigh** and **devicehigh** commands that enable you to specify the memory region in which you want to load a program. For more information, type **help loadhigh** or **help devicehigh** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- Microsoft Backup, a program that makes it easy to back up your data. This version of MS-DOS includes both Backup for MS-DOS, a program you can start from the command prompt, and Backup for Windows, a program you can use with the Microsoft Windows™ operating system. For more information about Backup, see the chapter “Managing Your System.”
- Microsoft Anti-Virus, a program that can identify and remove more than 800 different computer viruses from your system. This version of MS-DOS includes both Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, a program you can start from the command prompt, and Anti-Virus for Windows, a program you can use with Windows. For more information about Anti-Virus, see the chapter “Managing Your System.”
- Microsoft Undelete, an enhanced program that enables you to choose one of three levels of protection in case you accidentally delete a file. This version of MS-DOS includes Undelete for MS-DOS, a program you can run from the command prompt, and Undelete for Windows, a program you can use with Windows. For more information about Undelete, see the chapter “Managing Your System.”
- When you set up this version of MS-DOS and choose to install the Windows-based versions of Backup, Anti-Virus, and Undelete, Setup creates a new group in Program Manager named Microsoft Tools that contains icons for each program. Setup also adds a Tools menu to the menu bar in File Manager. If you have Windows for Workgroups, Setup also adds buttons to the toolbar in File Manager.
- The ability to define more than one configuration in your CONFIG.SYS file. This can be especially useful if you share a computer with several people. If your CONFIG.SYS file defines multiple configurations, MS-DOS displays a menu that enables you to choose the configuration you want to use each time you start your computer. For more information about multiple configurations, see the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

- The ability to bypass startup commands when you turn on your computer. With this feature, you can choose which CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT commands MS-DOS should carry out when you start your computer. By controlling the commands your computer uses to start up, you can pinpoint problems more quickly and easily. For more information about bypassing startup commands, see the chapter “Configuring Your System,” or type **help config.sys** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and see the “Bypassing CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands” section. You can also choose which commands MS-DOS should carry out in other batch files. For more information, type **help command** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and see the “/Y” section under “Switches.”
- Microsoft Defragmenter, a program that reorganizes files on your hard disk to minimize the time it takes your computer to access the files. For more information about the Defragmenter, see the chapter “Managing Your System,” or type **help defrag** at the MS-DOS command prompt.
- MS-DOS Help, a complete online reference to MS-DOS commands. The reference includes information about how to type commands and their parameters and switches, notes about commands, and examples of how to use commands. For more information about using MS-DOS Help, see the chapter “MS-DOS Basics.”
- An enhanced SMARTDrive program that speeds up your computer by using a disk cache, which stores information to be written to your hard disk and writes it to the disk later, when system resources are in less demand. MS-DOS does not display the command prompt until SMARTDrive has written its cache to your disk. This prevents you from turning off your computer before the data in memory is saved. If the MSCDEX program is loaded before SMARTDrive, SMARTDrive can also cache CD-ROM drives. For more information, see the chapter “Managing Your System,” or type **help smartdrv** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- An enhanced HIMEM extended memory manager that now automatically tests your system’s memory when you start your computer. This test can identify memory chips that are no longer reliable. (Unreliable memory can result in system instability or loss of data.) For more information, type **help himem** at the MS-DOS command prompt.
- Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD), a program that gathers and displays technical information about your computer. For more information, type **help msd** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.



- Interlnk, a program that enables you to easily transfer files between computers. With Interlnk and a cable, you can access information on another computer without having to copy files to that computer by using floppy disks. For more information about Interlnk, see the chapter “Features for Your Laptop Computer.”
- Power, a program that conserves battery power when applications and hardware devices are idle. With this feature, your batteries will last up to 25 percent longer. For more information about the Power program, see the chapter “Features for Your Laptop Computer.”
- A **move** command that moves one or more files from one directory or drive to another. You can also use the **move** command to rename directories. For more information, type **help move** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- Enhanced **move**, **copy**, and **xcopy** commands now prompt you to confirm that you want to replace a file with another file that has the same name. (When issued from a batch file, however, these commands do not prompt you for confirmation.)
- An enhanced **diskcopy** command, which now uses your hard disk as an interim storage area. This makes copying from one floppy disk to another faster and easier.
- Enhanced **dir**, **mem**, and **format** commands, whose output now includes thousands separators when displaying numbers greater than 999.
- The ability to prompt a user for input easily when running a batch program. With the **choice** command, you can display a specified prompt, pause for user input, and return an errorlevel parameter to the batch program. For more information about the **choice** command, type **help choice** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- A **deltree** command that deletes a directory and all of its files and subdirectories. For more information, type **help deltree** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.
- Fewer technical status messages appear when your computer starts. By default, the HIMEM, EMM386, and SMARTDrive programs now display no confirmation messages when they are loaded.

For additional information about new MS-DOS features, type **help whatsnew** at the MS-DOS command prompt, and then press ENTER.



# Conventions

This guide uses document and keyboard conventions to help you locate and identify information.

## Document Conventions

To help you locate and interpret information easily, this guide uses consistent visual cues and a standard key-combination format. These conventions are explained as follows.

This	Represents
<b>bold</b>	Commands and the switches that follow them. You must type commands and their switches exactly as they appear. To carry out a command, type the command and its switches, if any, and then press the ENTER key. For example, if you are instructed to type <b>net view</b> , type all the bold characters exactly as they are printed, and then press ENTER.
<i>italic</i>	Placeholders that represent information you must provide. For example, if you are asked to type <i>filename</i> , you would type the actual name of a file instead of the word shown in italic.  Italic type also signals a new term. An explanation precedes or follows the italicized term.
ALL CAPITALS	The names of computers, printers, directories, and files.

Microsoft documentation uses the term *MS-DOS* to refer to the Microsoft MS-DOS and IBM® PC-DOS operating systems.

## Keyboard Conventions

Key combinations and key sequences appear in the following format:

Notation	Meaning
KEY1+KEY2	A plus sign (+) between key names means you must press the keys at the same time. For example, “Press CTRL+C” means that you press CTRL and hold it down while you press C.
KEY1, KEY2	A comma (,) between key names means you must press the keys in sequence—for example, “Press ALT, F10” means that you press the ALT key and release it, and then press the F10 key and release it.

# Microsoft Support Services

Microsoft offers a variety of support options to help you get the most from MS-DOS. This section summarizes these options.

If you have a question about MS-DOS, first consult this guide and MS-DOS Help, a complete online reference to MS-DOS commands. For information about how to use MS-DOS Help, see “Getting Help” in the chapter “MS-DOS Basics.”

If you cannot find the answer to your question by consulting this guide or MS-DOS Help, view the README.TXT, NETWORK.TXT, and OS2.TXT files included with MS-DOS.

If this guide, MS-DOS Help, and the text files don’t provide an answer to your question, contact Microsoft Product Support. Outside the United States, contact Microsoft Product Support Services at the Microsoft subsidiary office that serves your area. For information about Microsoft subsidiary offices, see “Product Support Worldwide” later in this section.

## Product Support Within the United States

You can obtain product support in the following ways:

- Call Microsoft FastTips—This service provides recorded responses to common questions about MS-DOS. You can also have technical notes sent to your fax machine. FastTips is available 7 days a week, 24 hours a day.

To call Microsoft FastTips, dial (800) 936-4200. You can use the following keys on your touch-tone telephone after you reach FastTips:

- To advance to the next message, press \*.
- To repeat the current message, press 7.
- To return to the previous menu, press #.

---

**Note** You receive technical support at no charge for 90 days from the date of your first call, as discussed later in this section. However, calling FastTips does *not* initiate your 90-day no-charge support period.

---

- Use your modem to access the Microsoft Product Support Download Service, which provides the latest technical notes about the most common MS-DOS support issues. To reach the Microsoft Product Support Download Service, call (206) 936-6735 (936-MSDL), using the following communications settings:

For this setting	Specify
Baud rate	1200, 2400, or 9600
Parity	none
Data bits	8
Stop bits	1

- Use the Microsoft Forums on CompuServe—Microsoft Product Support Services is available on several CompuServe forums. For an introductory CompuServe membership kit specifically for Microsoft users, dial (800) 848-8199, press **1** when you are prompted, and then ask for operator 230. If you are already a CompuServe member, type **go microsoft** at any ! prompt.
- Call Microsoft Product Support Services—You can reach Microsoft Product Support Services between 6:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M. Pacific time, Monday through Friday, excluding holidays.  
For assistance with MS-DOS, dial (206) 646-5104. You receive technical support at no charge for 90 days from the date of your first call. (Telephone company toll charges may apply.)
- Call Microsoft for pay-as-you-go telephone support after your 90-day no-charge support period has ended. You can call 24 hours a day, seven days a week. Choose one of the following options:
  - Call (900) 555-2000 at the rate of \$2.00 per minute with a maximum charge of \$25 per incident. Charges appear on your telephone bill. You will not be charged until you are connected to a product support engineer.
  - Call (800) 936-5700 at a flat rate of \$25.00 per incident. Charges are billed to your Visa, MasterCard, or American Express card. You will not be charged until you are connected to a product support engineer.
- Call Microsoft TDD/TT (Text Telephone) Support—Microsoft Product Support Services is available for the deaf and hard of hearing. Using a TDD/TT modem, dial (206) 635-4948. You can call between 6:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M. Pacific time, Monday through Friday, excluding holidays.

When you call Microsoft Product Support Services, OnCall, or TDD/TT Support, you should be at your computer with this version of MS-DOS running and have the *Microsoft MS-DOS User's Guide* at hand. Be prepared to provide the following information:

- The serial number printed on the inside back cover of this guide
- The type of hardware you are using, including network hardware, if applicable
- The exact wording of any messages that appeared on your screen
- A description of what happened and what you were doing when the problem occurred
- How you tried to solve the problem

Microsoft's support services are subject to Microsoft prices, terms, and conditions in place at the time the service is used.

## Product Support Worldwide

If you are outside the United States and have a question about a Microsoft product, first:

- Consult the documentation and other printed information included with your product.
- Check online Help.
- Check the README files that come with your product disks. These files provide general information that became available after the books in the product package were published.
- Consult electronic options such as CompuServe forums or bulletin boards, if available.

If you cannot find a solution, you can receive information on how to obtain product support by contacting the Microsoft subsidiary office that serves your country.

## The Microsoft Support Network

The Microsoft Support Network, where available, offers you a wide range of choices and access to high-quality, responsive technical support. Microsoft recognises that support needs vary from user to user; the Microsoft Support Network allows you to choose the type of support that best meets your needs, with options ranging from electronic bulletin boards to annual support programmes.



## Calling a Microsoft Subsidiary Office

When you call, you should be at your computer and have the appropriate product documentation at hand. Be prepared to give the following information:

- The version number of the Microsoft product that you are using.
- The type of hardware that you are using, including network hardware, if applicable.
- The operating system that you are using.
- The exact wording of any messages that appeared on your screen.
- A description of what happened and what you were doing when the problem occurred.
- A description of how you tried to solve the problem.

Microsoft subsidiary offices and the countries they serve are listed below.

If there is no Microsoft office in your country, please contact the establishment from which you purchased your Microsoft product.

Area	Telephone Numbers
Argentina	Microsoft de Argentina S.A. Customer Service: (54) (1) 814-5105 (54) (1) 814-4807 (54) (1) 814-4808 (54) (1) 811-7199 Technical Support: (54) (1) 815-1521 Fax: (54) (1) 814-0372
Australia	Microsoft Pty. Ltd. Installation Support: (61) (02) 870-2870 Fax: (61) (02) 805-0519 Bulletin Board Service: (61) (02) 878-5200 Technical Support: (61) (02) 870-2131 Sales Information Centre: (61) (02) 870-2100
Austria	Microsoft Ges.m.b.H. Phone: 0222 - 68 76 07 Fax: 0222 - 68 16 2710 Information: 0660 - 6520 Prices, updates, etc.: 0660 - 6520 CompuServe: GO MSEURO (Microsoft Central Europe) MS-DOS, MS-DOS Lernprogramm: 0660 - 6517

---

Area	Telephone Numbers
Belgium	Microsoft NV Phone: 02-7303911 Customer Service: 02-7303922 CompuServe: 02-2150530 (GO MSBEN) Bulletin Board: 02-7350045 (1200/2400/9600 bd, 8N1, ANSI) Technical Support: 02-5133274 (Dutch speaking) 02-5023432 (English speaking) 02-5132268 (French speaking)
Bolivia	See Argentina
Brazil	Microsoft Informatica Ltda. Phone: (55) (11) 530-4455 Fax: (55) (11) 240-2205 Technical Support Phone: (55) (11) 871-0090 Technical Support Fax: (55) (11) 241-1157 Technical Support Bulletin Board Service: (55) (11) 872-4106
Canada	Microsoft Canada Inc. Head Office Phone: 1 (905) 568-0434 Customer Support Centre: 1 (800) 563-9048 Microsoft Support Network: Standard Technical Support Phone: 1 (905) 568-3503 Priority Support Information: 1 (800) 668-7975 Technical Support Bulletin Board Service: 1 (905) 507-3022 Text Telephone (TT/TDD) 1 (905) 568-9641
Caribbean	Microsoft Caribbean, Inc. Tel: (809) 273-3600 Fax: (809) 273-3636 Technical Support: (214) 714-9100
Chile	Microsoft Chile S.A. Tel: 56 2 218 5771, 56 2 218 5711, 56 2 218 7524 Fax: 56 2 218 5747
Colombia	Microsoft Colombia Tel: (571) 618 2245 Soporte Tecnico: (571) 618 2255 Fax:(571) 618 2269
Denmark	Microsoft Denmark AS Phone: (45) (44) 89 01 00 Technical Support: (45) (44) 89 01 11 Microsoft Sales Support: (45) (44) 89 01 90 Microsoft BBS: (45) (44) 66 90 46 (Document 303030 in FaxSvar contains detailed instructions) Microsoft FaxSvar: (45) (44) 89 01 44
Dubai	Microsoft Middle East Phone: (971) 4 513 888 Fax: (971) 4 527 444
England	See United Kingdom

Area	Telephone Numbers
Finland	Microsoft OY For Technical Support, please contact your local dealer. Phone: (358) (0) (9) 0 525 501 Microsoft BBS: (46) (0) 8 750 47 42 (Information in Swedish and English) Microsoft FaxSvar: (46) (0)8 752 29 00 (Information in Swedish and English)
France	Microsoft France Phone: (33) (1) 69-86-46-46 Telex: MSPARIS 604322 Fax: (33) (1) 64-46-06-60 Technical Support Phone: (33) (1) 69-86-10-20 Technical Support Fax: (33) (1) 69-28-00-28 Fax Information Service: (33) (1) 69-29-11-55
French Polynesia	See France
Germany	Microsoft GmbH Phone: 089 - 3176-0 Telex: (17) 89 83 28 MS GMBH D Fax: 089 - 3176-1000 Information: 089 - 3176 1199 Prices, updates, etc.: 089 - 3176 1199 Bulletin board, device drivers, tech notes : Btx: microsoft# or *610808000# CompuServe: GO MSEURO (Microsoft Central Europe) MS-DOS, MS-DOS Lernprogramm: 089/3176-1152
Greece	Microsoft Hellas, S.A. Phone: (30) (1) 6893 631 through (30) 1 6893 635 Fax: (30) (1) 6893 636
Hong Kong	Microsoft Hong Kong Limited Technical Support: (852) 804-4222 Fax: (852) 560-2217
Ireland	See United Kingdom
Israel	Microsoft Israel Ltd. Phone: 972-3-575-7034 Fax: 972-3-575-7065
Italy	Microsoft SpA Phone: (39) (2) 269121 Telex: 340321 I Fax: (39) (2) 21072020 Customer Service (Prices, new product info, product literature): (39) (2) 26901359 Bulletin Board: (39) (2) 21072051 Technical Support: (39) (2) 26901351

Area	Telephone Numbers
Japan	Microsoft Company Ltd. Phone: (81) (3) 5454-8000 Fax: (81) (3) 5454-7972 PSS Technical Support Fax: (81) (3) 5454-7955 Customer Service Phone (Version upgrade/Registration) Phone: (81) (3) 5454 2305 Fax: (81) (3) 5454-7952 Channel Marketing (Pre-sales Product Support) Information Center Phone: (81) (3) 5454-2300 Fax: (81) (3) 5454 7951
Korea	Microsoft CH Phone: (82) (2) 531-4500 Fax: (82) (2) 531-1724 Technical Support: (82) (2) 531-4800 Technical Support Fax : (82) (2) 563-5194 Technical Support Bulletin Board Service : (82) (2) 538-3256
Liechtenstein	See Switzerland (German speaking)
Luxembourg	Microsoft NV Phone: (32) 2-7303911 Customer Service: (32) 2-7303922 CompuServe: (32) 2-2150530 (GO MSBEN) Bulletin Board: (32) 2-7350045 (1200/2400/9600 bd, 8N1, ANSI) Technical Support: (32) 2-5133274 (Dutch speaking) (32) 2-5023432 (English speaking) (32) 2-5132268 (French speaking)
México	Microsoft México, S.A. de C.V. Phone: (52) (5) 325-0910 Customer Service: (52) (5) 325-0911 Bulletin Board Service: (52) (5) 590-5988 (1200/2400 baud, 8 bits, No parity, 1 stop bit, ANSI terminal emulation) Fax: (52) (5) 280-7940 Technical Support: Desktop & OS: (52) (5) 325-0912
Netherlands	Microsoft BV Phone: 02503-89189 Customer Service: 02503-77700 CompuServe: 020-6880085 (GO MSBEN) Bulletin Board: 02503-34221 (1200/2400/9600 bd, 8N1, ANSI) Technical Support: 02503-77877 (Dutch speaking) 02503-77853 (English speaking)



Area	Telephone Numbers
New Zealand	Microsoft New Zealand Ltd Phone: 64 (9) 358-3724 Fax: 64 (9) 358-3726 Technology Link Centre (Technical Support) Phone: 64 (9) 357-5575 Fax: 64 (9) 358-0092
Northern Ireland	See United Kingdom
Norway	Microsoft Norway AS Phone: (47) (22) 18 302 25 00 Technical Support: (47) (22) 02 25 50 Microsoft Sales Support: (47) 22 02 25 80 Microsoft BBS: (47) 22 18 22 09 (Document 404040 in FaxSvar contains detailed instructions) Microsoft FaxSvar: (47) 22 02 25 70
Papua New Guinea	See Australia
Paraguay	See Argentina
Portugal	MSFT, Lda. Phone: (351) 1 4412205 Fax: (351) 1 4412101
Republic of China	Microsoft Taiwan Corp. Phone: (886) (2) 504-3122 Fax: (886) (2) 504-3121 Technical Support : (886) (2) 508-9501
Republic of Ireland	See United Kingdom
Scotland	See United Kingdom
South Africa	Microsoft South Africa Phone: (27) 11 444 0520 Fax: (27) 11 444 0536
Spain	Microsoft Iberica SRL Phone: (34) (1) 804-0000 Fax: (34) (1) 803-8310 Technical Support: (34) (1) 803-9960
Sweden	Microsoft AB Phone: (46) (8) 752 56 00 Information on Technical Support: (46) (8) 752 09 29 Sales Support: (46) (8) 752 56 30 Microsoft BBS: (46) (8) 750 47 42 (Document 202020 in FaxSvar contains detailed instructions) Microsoft FaxSvar: (46) (0)8 752 29 00

---

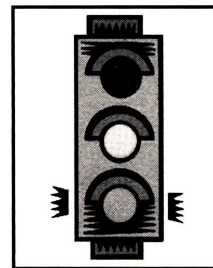
Area	Telephone Numbers
Switzerland	Microsoft AG Phone: 01 - 839 61 11 Fax: 01 - 831 08 69 Documentation: Phone: 155 59 00 Fax: 064 - 224294, Microsoft Info-Service, Postfach, 8099 Zürich Prices, updates, etc.: 01/839 61 11 CompuServe: GO MSEURO(Microsoft Central Europe) Technical support: MS-DOS, MS-DOS Lernprogramm: 01/342-2152 Technical support: (French speaking) 022 - 738 96 88
Turkey	Microsoft Turkey Phone: (90) 212 2585998 Fax: (90) 212 2585954
United Kingdom	Microsoft Limited Phone: (44) (734) 270000 Fax: (44) (734) 270002 Upgrades & Registration: (44) (81) 614 8000 Technical Support: Bulletin Board Service: (44) (734) 270065 (2400 Baud) (44) (734) 270060 (9600 Baud) Fax Information Service: (44) (734) 270080 Main Line (All Products): (44) (734) 271000 MS-DOS 90 day F.O.C. Support: (44) (734) 271900 MS-DOS Charged Support: (44) (891) 315500
Uruguay	See Argentina
Venezuela	Corporation MS 90 de Venezuela S.A. Technical Support: 58.2.910046, 58.2.910510 Other information: 58.2.910008, 58.2.914739, 58.2.913342 Fax: 58.2.923835
Wales	See United Kingdom



---

## CHAPTER 1

# Getting Started



This chapter describes how to set up the MS-DOS operating system on a computer that has a previous version of DOS or OS/2 installed on its hard disk.

Before you can use this version of MS-DOS, you must run the Setup program. The Setup program detects the type of hardware and software you have and notifies you if your computer does not meet the minimum requirements. Setup also notifies you if it detects system features that are incompatible with this version of MS-DOS. It is recommended that you back up your hard disk before you run Setup.

The files on the Setup disks are compressed. The Setup program decompresses these files and copies them to your hard disk. You can begin using this version of MS-DOS as soon as Setup is complete.

---

**Note** If you can use only 360 kilobyte (K) or 720K disks in your disk drives, use the coupon in the back of this guide to order 360K or 720K Setup disks.

---

## Upgrading from an Earlier Version of DOS

This section describes how to set up MS-DOS on a computer that already has an earlier version of DOS installed on its hard disk.

---

**Note** If you have OS/2 on your computer, see “Upgrading from OS/2 to MS-DOS” later in this chapter.

---

## Before You Upgrade MS-DOS

Before you start the Setup program, read the following three sections. You must carry out the procedure in “Prepare the Uninstall Disk.” Carry out the remaining two procedures only if they apply to your system.

## Prepare the Uninstall Disk

Write “Uninstall #1” on the label of one unformatted or newly formatted floppy disk that is compatible with drive A. (If you are using 360K disks, you might need two floppy disks. If this is the case, label the disks “Uninstall #1” and “Uninstall #2.”) You will need to use the Uninstall disk in drive A during Setup.

The purpose of the Uninstall disk is to safeguard the files on your computer while you are installing MS-DOS. The Uninstall disk protects the files if Setup cannot finish installing MS-DOS or if you encounter problems with MS-DOS after Setup. By using the Uninstall disk, you can restore your previous version of DOS if you need to. For more information about the Uninstall disk, see “Using the Uninstall Disk” in the chapter “Diagnosing and Solving Problems.”

## Disable Automatic Message Services

Before you run Setup, disable any automatic message service, such as a network popup or a printing notification, that prints directly to your screen. These message services are incompatible with Setup.

## Disable Disk-Caching, Delete-Protection, and Anti-Virus Programs

Some disk-caching, delete-protection, and anti-virus programs conflict with Setup. If programs such as these are loaded each time you start your computer, you might want to edit your AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files and disable or remove the startup commands for these programs. To do this, carry out the following procedure.

---

**Note** You do not need to disable the startup command for the MS-DOS SMARTDrive program.

---

### ► To disable disk-caching, delete-protection, or anti-virus programs

1. Open your AUTOEXEC.BAT file by using any text editor.
2. Type **rem** and a space at the beginning of each command line that starts a disk-caching, delete-protection, or anti-virus program. For example, suppose the following command appears in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
c:\dos\vsafe.com
```

To disable this command, you would change it to the following:

```
rem c:\dos\vsafe.com
```

If you don't know the names of the commands that load your disk-caching, delete-protection, or anti-virus programs, see the documentation that came with the programs.



3. Save your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.
4. Open your CONFIG.SYS file, and disable any disk-caching, delete-protection, or anti-virus programs (as described in step 2).
5. Save your CONFIG.SYS file, and then quit the text editor.
6. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. Then run Setup.
7. After you set up MS-DOS, open your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, delete the **rem** commands that you added, and then save the files.
8. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

## Running Setup

To set up MS-DOS, you need the Setup disks included with this product. You'll also need to supply the unformatted or newly formatted Uninstall disk described earlier in this chapter.

---

**Important** Do not run Setup while Microsoft Windows or MS-DOS Shell is running.

---

### ► To set up MS-DOS

1. Start your computer.
2. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B.
3. Type the following at the command prompt:  
**a:setup**  
or  
**b:setup**
4. Follow the instructions on your screen.  
If you have questions about any of the procedures or options you encounter during Setup, press F1 for Help.
5. When Setup prompts you for the Uninstall disk(s), insert the disk(s) in drive A.  
You must use drive A because Setup copies files to the Uninstall disk that MS-DOS needs to start your computer.

---

**Note** Setup places your previous DOS files in a directory named OLD\_DOS.x. If you are sure you do not want to restore your previous version of DOS, you can delete the OLD\_DOS.x directory and its contents by typing **deloldos** at the command prompt.

---

During Setup, a screen will prompt you to specify whether you want to install Microsoft Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete.

If you choose to install Anti-Virus, Backup, or Undelete for Windows, Setup automatically creates a Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager and adds icons for these programs to the group.

---

**Note** If you do not have Windows installed on your computer, you cannot set up these programs for Windows.

---

If you are running Windows version 3.1 and you install Undelete for Windows, Setup adds an Undelete command to the File menu in File Manager. If you install Anti-Virus and Backup for Windows, Setup creates a Tools menu in File Manager and adds commands for these programs to it.

If you have problems running Setup, see “Troubleshooting During Setup” in the chapter “Diagnosing and Solving Problems.”

## Installing Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete After Setup

If you didn't install Anti-Virus, Backup, or Undelete during Setup, you can run Setup again to install the programs. For example, if you install Windows after setting up this version of MS-DOS, you can run MS-DOS Setup again to install Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete for Windows.

---

**Note** If you installed this version of MS-DOS by inserting Setup Disk 1 in drive A and restarting your computer, Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete for MS-DOS are already installed. However, you need to run Setup again to configure Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete for Windows.

---

Carry out the following procedure to set up the Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete programs. If you want to install the Windows versions of these programs, make sure Windows is installed on your computer first.

► **To set up Anti-Virus, Backup, or Undelete if you have already run Setup**

1. If you originally started Setup by typing **setup** at the command prompt, insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B, and then type the following at the command prompt:

**a:setup /e**

or

**b:setup /e**

If you originally started Setup by inserting Setup Disk 1 in drive A and restarting your computer, insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A, and then type the following at the command prompt:

**a:busetup /e**

2. Follow the instructions on your screen.

## Upgrading from OS/2 to MS-DOS

This section describes how to set up MS-DOS on a computer that has the OS/2 operating system installed on its hard disk. (If you have only DOS on your computer, see the previous section, “Upgrading from an Earlier Version of DOS.”)

This section contains information about setting up MS-DOS if you:

- Have neither OS/2 Dual Boot nor OS/2 Boot Manager on your computer.
- Have OS/2 Dual Boot with DOS or OS/2 Boot Manager with DOS on your computer.
- Have OS/2 Boot Manager without DOS on your computer.

## If You Have Neither OS/2 Dual Boot Nor OS/2 Boot Manager

This section describes how to set up MS-DOS on a computer that has the OS/2 operating system, but has neither OS/2 Dual Boot nor OS/2 Boot Manager.

### Running Setup

To set up MS-DOS, you need the Setup disks included with this product.

#### ► To set up MS-DOS if you have neither OS/2 Dual Boot nor OS/2 Boot Manager

1. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A (the startup drive).
2. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
3. If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer without saving the data on your hard disk, choose to remove it when Setup prompts you to do so.

If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer but want to save the data on your hard disk first, skip to the following section, “Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Hard Disk.”

4. Follow the instructions on your screen.

If you have questions about any of the procedures or options you encounter during Setup, press F1 for Help.

If you have problems running Setup, see “Troubleshooting During Setup” in the chapter “Diagnosing and Solving Problems.”

## **Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Hard Disk**

If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer but want to save the data on your hard disk first, quit Setup, and then view the OS2.TXT file for instructions. To view the OS2.TXT file, open it by using any text editor. The file is located on Setup Disk 1.

## **If You Have OS/2 Dual Boot with DOS or OS/2 Boot Manager with DOS**

This section describes how to set up MS-DOS if you have OS/2 Dual Boot or OS/2 Boot Manager and one of your operating systems is DOS.

### **Before You Upgrade to MS-DOS**

Prepare your computer for the MS-DOS Setup program by doing the following:

- Prepare the Uninstall disk(s). For instructions, see the section “Prepare the Uninstall Disk” earlier in this chapter.
- Disable automatic message services. For more information, see “Disable Automatic Message Services” earlier in this chapter.
- Disable disk-caching, delete-protection, and anti-virus programs. For more information, see “Disable Disk-Caching, Delete-Protection, and Anti-Virus Programs” earlier in this chapter.

### **Running Setup**

To set up MS-DOS, you need the Setup disks included with this product. You will also need the Uninstall disk(s) mentioned in the previous section.

#### **► To set up MS-DOS if you have OS/2 Dual Boot or OS/2 Boot Manager, and one of your operating systems is DOS**

1. Start your computer with your current version of DOS.
2. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B.



3. Type the following at the command prompt:

**a:setup**

or

**b:setup**

4. If you want to keep OS/2 on your computer, choose the “Continue Setup” option when Setup displays the “Non-MS-DOS Partition Detected” or “OS/2 Files Detected” screen. Then proceed to step 5.

If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer but want to save the data on your hard disk first, skip to the following section, “Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Hard Disk.”

---

**Note** If you have a version of OS/2 Dual Boot that prompts you to select an operating system each time you start your computer and you want to keep OS/2, you must reinstall OS/2 after you install this version of MS-DOS.

---

5. Follow the instructions on your screen.

If you have questions about any of the procedures or options you encounter during Setup, press F1 for Help.

6. When Setup prompts you for the Uninstall disk, insert the disk(s) in drive A. You must use drive A because Setup copies files to the Uninstall disk that MS-DOS needs to start your computer.

---

**Note** Setup places your previous DOS files in a directory named OLD\_DOS.x. If you are sure you do not want to restore your previous version of DOS, you can delete the OLD\_DOS.x directory and its contents by typing **deloldos** at the command prompt.

---

7. If you are using OS/2 Boot Manager, make the Boot Manager partition active after Setup is complete and your computer restarts. To make the Boot Manager partition active, carry out the following procedure.

► **To make the Boot Manager partition active**

1. Type **fdisk** at the command prompt.

The Fdisk Options screen appears.

2. Choose 2, and then press ENTER.

The Set Active Partition screen appears.

The Boot Manager partition appears as a 1-MB non-MS-DOS partition.

3. Choose the number that corresponds with the Boot Manager partition, and then press ENTER.

4. When the confirmation screen appears, press ESC.

The Fdisk Options screen appears.

5. Press ESC to exit Fdisk.

Your computer restarts.

If you install Anti-Virus, Backup, or Undelete for Windows during Setup, Setup automatically creates a Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager and adds their icons to the group. In addition, if you install Undelete for Windows, Setup adds an Undelete command to the File menu in File Manager. If you install Anti-Virus and Backup for Windows, Setup adds commands for these programs to a Tools menu.

---

**Note** If you do not have Windows installed on your computer, you cannot set up the optional programs for Windows.

---

If you have problems running Setup, see “Troubleshooting During Setup” in the chapter “Diagnosing and Solving Problems.”

## Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Hard Disk

When Setup detects OS/2, it displays a “Non-MS-DOS Partition Detected” or an “OS/2 Files Detected” screen. Make a note of which screen Setup displays; the procedure you use to remove OS/2 and save data on your computer depends on which screen Setup displays. For instructions on removing OS/2 and saving data on your computer, quit Setup and view the OS2.TXT file. To view the OS2.TXT file, open it by using any text editor. The file is located on Setup Disk 1.

## If You Have OS/2 Boot Manager Without DOS

This section describes how to set up MS-DOS on a computer that has OS/2 Boot Manager and does not have DOS.

### Running Setup

To set up MS-DOS, you need the Setup disks included with this product.

► **To set up MS-DOS if you have OS/2 Boot Manager without DOS**

1. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A (the startup drive).
2. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
3. If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer without saving the data on your hard disk, choose to remove the data when Setup prompts you to do so. Then proceed to step 4.

If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer but want to save the data on your hard disk first, skip to the following section, “Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Hard Disk.”

If you want to keep OS/2, see your OS/2 documentation for information about setting up OS/2 and MS-DOS on the same computer. In general, you will first need to install MS-DOS on drive C.

4. Follow the instructions on your screen.

If you have questions about any of the procedures or options you encounter during Setup, press F1 for Help.

If you have problems running Setup, see “Troubleshooting During Setup” in the chapter “Diagnosing and Solving Problems.”

## **Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Hard Disk**

If you want to remove OS/2 from your computer but want to save the data on your hard disk first, quit Setup. Then view the OS2.TXT file for instructions on how to remove OS/2 and save the data on your hard disk. To view the OS2.TXT file, open it by using any text editor. The file is located on Setup Disk 1.

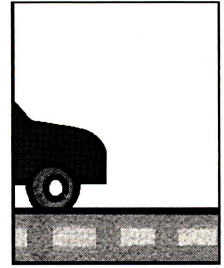




---

## CHAPTER 2

# MS-DOS Basics



This chapter explains the basics of using MS-DOS. The first section of this chapter is a tutorial. You can use the tutorial to learn and practice some of the most common MS-DOS commands. The second section of this chapter explains in more detail some of the concepts described in the tutorial and provides more information about using MS-DOS and MS-DOS Help.

## Learning MS-DOS Basics—A Tutorial

This tutorial gives you an opportunity to try basic MS-DOS commands. By following the procedures in this section, you will learn to:

- View the contents of a directory
- Change from one directory to another
- Create and delete directories
- Change from one drive to another
- Copy files
- Rename files
- Delete files
- Format a floppy disk

## The Command Prompt

When you first turn on your computer, you will see some cryptic information flash by. MS-DOS displays this information to let you know how it is configuring your computer. You can ignore it for now. When the information stops scrolling past, you'll see the following:

```
C:\>
```

This is called the *command prompt*. The flashing underscore next to the command prompt is called the *cursor*. The cursor shows where the command you type will appear.

If your command prompt looks like the sample command prompt earlier in this section, skip to the following section, “Typing a Command.”

If your command prompt does not look like the example, type the following at the command prompt, and then press ENTER:

```
cd \
```

Note that the slash leans backward, not forward. You will learn more about the **cd** command later in the tutorial. If your command prompt still doesn't look like the example, type the following at the command prompt, and then press ENTER:

```
prompt $p$g
```

Your command prompt should now look like the example.

## Typing a Command

This section explains how to type a command at the command prompt and demonstrates the “Bad command or file name” message.

### ► To type a command at the command prompt

1. Type the following at the command prompt (you can type the command in either uppercase or lowercase letters):

```
nul
```

If you make a typing mistake, press the BACKSPACE key to erase the mistake, and then try again.

2. Press ENTER.

You must press ENTER after every command you type.

The following message appears:

```
Bad command or file name
```

The “Bad command or file name” message appears when you type something that MS-DOS does not recognize. Because **nul** is not a valid MS-DOS command, MS-DOS displays the “Bad command or file name” message.

3. Now, type the following command at the command prompt:

```
ver
```

The **ver** command displays the version number of MS-DOS.

Continue to the next section, where you will use the **dir** command to view the contents of a directory.

## Viewing the Contents of a Directory

In this section, you will view the contents of a directory by using the **dir** command. The **dir** command stands for “directory.”

### ► To view the contents of a directory

- Type the following at the command prompt:

```
dir
```

A list similar to the following appears:

```
Volume in drive C is MS-DOS
Volume Serial Number is 1E49-15E2
Directory of C:\

WINDOWS      <DIR>      09-08-92  10:27p
TEMP         <DIR>      05-15-92  12:09p
CONFIG  SYS           278 09-23-92  10:50a
COMMAND  COM       53014 09-18-92   6:00a
WINA20    386       9349 11-11-91   5:00a
DOS       <DIR>      09-02-92   4:23p
AUTOEXEC  BAT       290 09-23-92  10:54a
       7 file(s)      62931 bytes
                        8732672 bytes free
```

This is called a *directory list*. A directory list is a list of all the files and subdirectories that a directory contains. In this case, you see all the files and directories in the main or *root* directory of your drive. All the files and directories on your drive are stored in the root directory.

## Changing Directories

Look at the list on your screen. All the names that have <DIR> beside them are directories. You can see a list of the files in another directory by changing to that directory, and then using the **dir** command again. In this case, you will change to the DOS directory.

Before you begin this section, make sure you have a directory named DOS by carrying out the following procedure.

► **To make sure you have a directory named DOS**

1. Look through the directory list on your screen for a line that looks similar to the following:

```
DOS          <DIR>      09-02-92    4:23p
```

2. If you see a line like this, you have a directory named DOS. Skip to the next procedure, “To change from the root directory to the DOS directory.”

If you do not see a line in the directory list indicating that you have a directory named DOS, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir /s memmaker.exe**

You will see a message that includes a line such as the following:

```
Directory of C:\DIRNAME
```

If the name that appears in place of DIRNAME is DOS, you have a DOS directory. Skip to the next procedure.

If the name that appears in place of DIRNAME is not DOS, substitute the name that appears for DOS throughout this tutorial. For example, if the name that appears in place of DIRNAME is MSDOS, type **msdos** whenever you are instructed to type **dos**.

► **To change from the root directory to the DOS directory**

To change directories, you will use the **cd** command. The **cd** command stands for “change directory.”

- Type the following at the command prompt:

**cd dos**

The command prompt changes. It should now look like the following:

```
C:\DOS>
```

The command prompt shows which directory you are in. In this case, you know you successfully changed to the DOS directory because the command prompt displays the directory's name. Now the *current directory* is DOS.



Next, you will use the **dir** command to view a list of the files in the DOS directory.

► **To view a list of the files in the DOS directory**

- Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

A list of the files in the DOS directory appears, but scrolls by too quickly to read. You can modify the **dir** command so that it displays only one screen of information at a time.

► **To view the contents of a directory one screen at a time**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir /p**

One screen of information appears. At the bottom of the screen, you will see the following message:

Press any key to continue . . .

2. To view the next screen of information, press any key on your keyboard. Repeat this step until the command prompt appears at the bottom of your screen.

When you typed the **dir** command this time, you included the **/p** switch after the command. A *switch* modifies the way MS-DOS carries out a command. Generally, a switch consists of a forward slash (/) that is followed by one or more letters or numbers. When you used the **/p** switch with the **dir** command, you specified that MS-DOS should pause after it displays each screen of directory list information.

Another helpful switch you can use with the **dir** command is the **/w** switch. The **/w** switch indicates that MS-DOS should show a wide version of the directory list.

► **To view the contents of a directory in wide format**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir /w**

The directory list appears, with the filenames listed in wide format. Note that only filenames are listed. No information about the files' size or date and time of creation appears.

2. If the directory contains more files than will fit on one screen, you can combine the **/p** and **/w** switches as follows:

**dir /w /p**

## Changing Back to the Root Directory

Next, you will change from the DOS directory to the root directory. The root directory is the directory you were in before you changed to the DOS directory. Before you begin this section, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\DOS>
```

### ► To change to the root directory

- Type the following at the command prompt:

```
cd \
```

Note that the slash you type in this command is a backslash (\), not a forward slash (/).

No matter which directory you are in, this command always returns you to the root directory of a drive. The root directory does not have a name. It is simply referred to by a backslash (\).

The command prompt should now look like the following:

```
C:\>
```

When your command prompt appears similar to this—that is, when it does not contain the name of a directory—you are in the root directory.

## Creating a Directory

In this section, you will create two directories. Creating a directory is helpful if you want to organize related files into groups to make them easy to find. Before you begin this section, make sure the command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\>
```

To create a directory, you will use the **md** command. The **md** command stands for “make directory.”

### ► To create and change to a directory named FRUIT

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

```
md fruit
```

You have now created a directory named **FRUIT**. You won't see the new **FRUIT** directory until you carry out the **dir** command in the next step.

2. To confirm that you successfully created the FRUIT directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

or

**dir /p**

Look through the directory list. A new entry somewhere in the list should look similar to the following:

```
FRUIT          <DIR>          09-25-93  12:09p
```

3. To change to the new FRUIT directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**cd fruit**

The command prompt should now look like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

You will now create a directory within the FRUIT directory, named GRAPES.

► **To create and work with a directory named GRAPES**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**md grapes**

You will not see the new GRAPES directory until you carry out the **dir** command in the next step.

2. To confirm that you successfully created the GRAPES directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

A list similar to the following appears:

```
Volume in drive C is MS-DOS
Volume Serial Number is 1E49-15E2
Directory of C:\FRUIT

.           <DIR>          09-25-93  12:08p
..          <DIR>          09-25-93  12:08p
GRAPES      <DIR>          09-25-93  12:10p
          3 file(s)              0 bytes
          11534336 bytes free
```

Note that there are three entries in the FRUIT directory. One is the GRAPES directory that you just created. There are two other entries—one looks like a single period (.) and the other looks like a double period (..). These directory entries are important to MS-DOS, but you can ignore them. They appear in every directory.

The GRAPES directory is a *subdirectory* of the FRUIT directory. A subdirectory is a directory within another directory. Subdirectories are useful if you want to further subdivide information.

3. To change to the GRAPES directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**cd grapes**

The command prompt should now look like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT\GRAPES>
```

4. To switch back to the FRUIT directory, type the following:

**cd ..**

The command prompt should now look like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

When the **cd** command is followed by two periods (..), MS-DOS moves up one level in the directory structure. In this case, you moved up one level from the GRAPES directory to the FRUIT directory.

## Deleting a Directory

If you no longer use a particular directory, you may want to delete it to simplify your directory structure. Deleting a directory is also useful if you type the wrong name when you are creating a directory and you want to delete the incorrect directory before creating a new one.

In this section, you will delete the GRAPES directory. Before you begin this section, make sure the command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

To delete a directory, use the **rd** command. The **rd** command stands for “remove directory.”

### ► To delete the GRAPES directory

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**rd grapes**

2. To confirm that you successfully deleted the GRAPES directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

The GRAPES directory should no longer appear in the directory list.

---

**Note** You cannot delete a directory if you are in it. Before you can delete a directory, you must make the directory that is one level higher the current directory. To do this, type **cd..** at the command prompt.

---

## Changing Drives

This section describes how to change drives. Changing drives is useful if you want to work with files that are on a different drive.

So far, you have been working with drive C. You have other drives you can use to store information. For example, drive A is your first floppy disk drive. The files and directories on drive A are located on the floppy disk in the drive. (You might also have a drive B, which contains the files and directories stored on the floppy disk in that drive.)

Before you begin this section, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

► **To change to and view files on a different drive**

1. Insert Setup Disk 1 (included with your copy of MS-DOS) in drive A label-side up. Then close the drive door or make sure the disk clicks into the drive.
2. Type the following at the command prompt:

**a:**

Note that the command prompt changed to the following:

```
A:\>
```

This message may appear:

```
Not ready reading drive A
Abort, Retry, Fail?
```

If you see this message, the drive door may not be closed properly. Place the disk label-side up in the disk drive, and then close the drive door or make sure the disk clicks into the disk drive. Then, type **r** for Retry. If this message appears again, press **F** for Fail, and then type **b:** at the command prompt. If you no longer see this message, type **b:** instead of **a:** throughout the rest of the tutorial.

There must be a floppy disk in the drive that you want to change to.

3. To view a list of the files on the floppy disk in drive A, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

A list of the files on the disk appears.



4. Change back to drive C by typing the following at the command prompt:

**c:**

Your command prompt should return to the following:

C:\FRUIT>

When you type a drive letter followed by a colon, you change to that drive. The drive letter that appears in the command prompt shows which drive is the *current drive*. Unless you specify otherwise, any commands you type are carried out on the current drive and in the current directory.

So far, all the commands you typed were carried out on the current drive and in the current directory. You can also carry out a command on a drive that isn't current. For example, you can view the files on a disk in drive A without switching to drive A by following this procedure.

► **To view files on drive A when drive C is current**

- Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir a:**

If your MS-DOS Setup disk is in drive B, type **dir b:** instead.

A list of the files on the floppy disk in drive A appears, even though your command prompt indicates that drive C is current.

By specifying **a:** after the **dir** command, you are giving MS-DOS additional information. You are indicating that you want the **dir** command to show the list of files and directories on drive A instead of drive C. The **a:** you typed after the **dir** command is called a *parameter*. A parameter specifies what a command should act on. In the previous example, the parameter you used indicated which directory list you want to view.

The following procedure presents another example of using a parameter.

► **To view the contents of the DOS directory on drive C**

- Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir c:\dos**

A list of the files in the DOS directory on drive C should scroll past on your screen.

The **c:\dos** parameter specifies that you want MS-DOS to display the contents of the DOS directory on drive C, even though your command prompt indicates that the FRUIT directory is current.

## Copying Files

This section describes how to copy a single file and a group of files. Copying files creates a duplicate of the original file and does not remove the original file. This is useful for many reasons. For example, if you want to work on a document at home, you can copy it from your computer at work to a floppy disk and then take the floppy disk home.

To copy a file, you will use the **copy** command. When you use the **copy** command, you must include two parameters. The first is the location and name of the file you want to copy, or the *source*. The second is the location to which you want to copy the file, or the *destination*. You separate the source and destination with a space. The **copy** command follows this pattern:

**copy** *source destination*

### Copying a Single File

In this section, you will copy the EDIT.HLP and EDIT.COM files from the DOS directory to the FRUIT directory. You will specify the source and destination of these files in two different ways. The difference between the two methods is explained at the end of this section.

Before you begin this section, make sure the command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

#### ► To copy the EDIT.HLP and EDIT.COM files from the DOS directory to the FRUIT directory

1. Return to the root directory by typing the following at the command prompt:

```
cd \
```

The command prompt should now look like the following:

```
C:\>
```

2. Change to the DOS directory by typing the following at the command prompt:

```
cd dos
```

The command prompt should now look like the following:

```
C:\DOS>
```

3. Make sure the file you are going to copy, EDIT.COM, is located in the DOS directory by using the **dir** command followed by a filename.

To see if the EDIT.COM file is in the DOS directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir edit.com**

A list similar to the following appears:

```
Volume in drive C is MS-DOS
Volume Serial Number is 1E49-15E2
Directory of C:\DOS

EDIT      COM      413 03-25-93   5:00a
          1 file(s)      413 bytes
                        11999232 bytes free
```

This shows that the EDIT.COM file is located in the DOS directory. You just specified another parameter with the **dir** command, one that directs MS-DOS to list only the files that match the filename you specified in the command. Since only one file in the DOS directory can be named EDIT.COM, the directory list includes only that file.

4. To copy the EDIT.COM file from the DOS directory to the FRUIT directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**copy c:\dos\edit.com c:\fruit**

The following message appears:

```
1 file(s) copied
```

The command you just typed copied the file from its source to its destination. By specifying C:\DOS\EDIT.COM as the source, you indicated that MS-DOS would find the source file EDIT.COM on drive C in the DOS directory. By specifying C:\FRUIT as the destination, you indicated that MS-DOS should place the copy of EDIT.COM on drive C in the FRUIT directory.

5. Next, you will copy the EDIT.HLP file to the FRUIT directory. To confirm that the EDIT.HLP file is in the DOS directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir edit.hlp**

6. To copy the EDIT.HLP file from the DOS directory to the FRUIT directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**copy edit.hlp \fruit**

The following message appears:

```
1 file(s) copied
```

If you forgot to leave a space before typing **\fruit**, the following message will appear:

Access denied

If this message appears, type the command again and leave a space before **\fruit**.

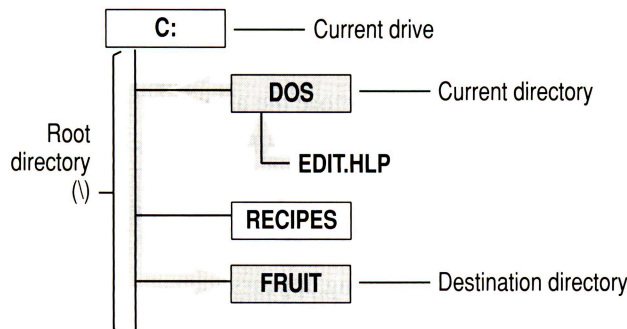
7. To confirm that you copied the files successfully, view the contents of the FRUIT directory by typing the following at the command prompt:

**dir \fruit**

You should see the two files listed in the FRUIT directory.

Note that you specified the source and destination in the two **copy** commands differently. In the command you typed in step 4, you specified the source file as C:\DOS\EDIT.COM and the destination directory as C:\FRUIT. Both C:\DOS\EDIT.COM and C:\FRUIT are called *full paths* because you specified the drive and directory where these files are located. Specifying the full path is the safest way to copy files, because you provide all the information about which file you want to copy and which directory you want to copy it to.

In the **copy** command you typed in step 6, you specified EDIT.HLP for the source file and \FRUIT for the destination directory. These are *relative paths*. A relative path specifies only the difference between the current drive and directory and the destination of the files you are copying. The following illustration shows how the DOS directory and the FRUIT directory are related:



When you typed the second **copy** command, you specified the source filename as EDIT.HLP instead of C:\DOS\EDIT.HLP. This is because drive C is the current drive, so you did not have to repeat C: in the path. The DOS directory is the current directory, so you did not have to repeat DOS in the path. You had to specify only the filename.



For the destination directory, you specified the relative path as \FRUIT instead of C:\FRUIT. Again, you did not need to specify drive C, because drive C is current. However, the FRUIT directory is not current. To access the FRUIT directory from the current directory, DOS, MS-DOS must first return to the root directory (\), and then switch to the FRUIT directory, before copying the file to its new location. Therefore, you typed the path MS-DOS must take to switch between the current directory and the FRUIT directory, or \FRUIT.

## Copying a Group of Files

In this section, you will use *wildcards* to copy a group of files from the DOS directory to the FRUIT directory. In a card game, a wildcard matches any card in the deck. In MS-DOS, the asterisk (\*) wildcard matches any character in that position and all the other positions that follow it. If you want to copy a group of files with similar names, using wildcards is easier than copying each file individually.

In this section, you will first view a group of files by using wildcards, and then copy the files using wildcards. Before you begin this section, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\DOS>
```

### ► To list all files ending with the extension .TXT and copy them from the DOS directory to the FRUIT directory by using wildcards

1. View all the files in the DOS directory that end with the extension .TXT by typing the following at the command prompt:

```
dir *.txt
```

Note that there is a space before the asterisk (\*), but not after it.

This command directs MS-DOS to list all files and subdirectories in the current directory that end with the extension .TXT. The asterisk matches the first character of the filename and all other characters that follow it, up to the period (.) that separates the name from the .TXT extension.

A list similar to the following appears:

```
Volume in drive C is MS-DOS
Volume Serial Number is 1E49-15E2
Directory of C:\DOS
```

```
NETWORKS TXT      8369 11-11-93   5:00a
OS2          TXT      4587 11-11-93   5:00a
README      TXT     10858 11-11-93   5:00a
          3 file(s)      23814 bytes
```



MS-DOS lists all the files that end with a .TXT extension. The wildcard in your command specified that MS-DOS should ignore the very different beginnings of the files and focus only on the extensions.

Next, you will copy all the files with a .TXT extension to the FRUIT directory by using wildcards.

2. To copy the files with a .TXT extension to the FRUIT directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**copy \*.txt \fruit**

This command copies all the files that have the .TXT extension from the current directory (DOS) to the FRUIT directory.

3. To confirm that you copied the files successfully, change to the FRUIT directory by typing the following at the command prompt:

**cd \fruit**

4. To view a list of all the files in the FRUIT directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

A list similar to the following appears:

```
Volume in drive C is MS-DOS
Volume Serial Number is 1E49-15E2
Directory of C:\FRUIT

.                <DIR>      09-27-93  11:11p
..               <DIR>      09-27-93  11:11p
EDIT            COM         413 11-11-93   5:00a
EDIT            HLP       17898 11-11-93   5:00a
NETWORKS       TXT        8369 11-11-93   5:00a
OS2             TXT        4587 11-11-93   5:00a
README         TXT       10858 11-11-93   5:00a

              7 file(s)         42125 bytes
                        40652800 bytes free
```

The EDIT.COM and EDIT.HLP files are the files you copied by following the procedure in the previous section. The files with .TXT extensions are the ones you just copied by using wildcards.

## Renaming Files

This section explains how to rename files. You may want to rename a file if the information in it changes or if you decide you prefer another name.

To rename a file, you will use the **ren** command. The **ren** command stands for “rename.” When you use the **ren** command, you must include two parameters.

The first is the file you want to rename, and the second is the new name for the file. You separate the two names with a space. The **ren** command follows this pattern:

**ren** *oldname newname*

## Renaming a File

In this section, you will rename the README.TXT file.

Before you begin this section, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

### ► To rename the README.TXT file to PEACH.TXT

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**ren readme.txt peach.txt**

2. To confirm that you renamed the file successfully, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

The name PEACH.TXT should appear instead of the name README.TXT. It is the same file, but now has a different name.

## Renaming a Group of Files

You also can use wildcards to rename a group of files. If you want to rename a group of files that have similar names, using wildcards is easier than renaming the files individually. In this section, you will rename a group of files by using wildcards.

Before beginning this section, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

### ► To rename the files whose names begin with EDIT by using wildcards

1. List the files in the FRUIT directory that begin with EDIT by typing the following at the command prompt:

**dir edit.\***

A list of the files in the FRUIT directory that begin with EDIT appears.

2. To rename the files that begin with EDIT to the new name PEAR, type the following command:

**ren edit.\* pear.\***

This command specifies that all the files that begin with EDIT should be renamed PEAR, but should keep their original extensions.

3. To confirm that you renamed the files successfully, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir pear.\***

When the files were renamed, their extensions remained the same. For example, EDIT.COM became PEAR.COM, and EDIT.HLP became PEAR.HLP.

You can also rename extensions this way. For example, suppose you want to indicate that a group of files ending with a .TXT extension are old. You can use wildcards to rename the files so they have the extension .OLD.

► **To rename all the files in the current directory whose names end with the extension .TXT**

1. View a list of all the files in the current directory with the extension .TXT by typing the following command:

**dir \*.txt**

2. To rename all files in the current directory that end with the extension .TXT to end with the extension .OLD, type the following command:

**ren \*.txt \*.old**

3. To confirm that you renamed the files successfully, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

The files that had the extension .TXT now have the extension .OLD.

## Deleting Files

This section explains how to delete, or remove, a file that you no longer want on your disk. If you don't have very much disk space, deleting files you no longer use is essential.

To delete a file, you will use the **del** command. The **del** command stands for "delete."

## Deleting a File

In this section, you will delete two files using the **del** command.

Before you begin, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

► **To delete the PEAR.COM and PEAR.HLP files**

1. Delete the PEAR.COM file by typing the following at the command prompt:

**del pear.com**

2. Delete the PEAR.HLP file by typing the following at the command prompt:

**del pear.hlp**

3. To confirm that you deleted the files successfully, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

The PEAR.COM and PEAR.HLP files should no longer appear in the list.

## Deleting a Group of Files

In this section, you will use wildcards to delete a group of files.

Before you begin this section, make sure your command prompt looks like the following:

```
C:\FRUIT>
```

► **To delete files in the current directory that end with the extension .OLD by using wildcards**

1. View all files that end with the extension .OLD by typing the following at the command prompt:

**dir \*.old**

A list of all the files that end with the extension .OLD appears. Make sure that these are the files you want to delete. When you are deleting files by using wildcards, this step is very important. It will prevent you from deleting files accidentally.

2. Delete all files ending with .OLD by typing the following at the command prompt:

**del \*.old**

3. To confirm that all the files with the extension .OLD have been deleted, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir**

The FRUIT directory should contain no files.

Now that the FRUIT directory is empty, you can delete it by using the **rd** (remove directory) command that you learned to use in “Deleting a Directory” earlier in this chapter.

► **To delete the FRUIT directory**

1. Return to the root directory by typing the following at the command prompt:  
**cd \**
2. You can see the FRUIT directory in the directory list by typing the following at the command prompt:  
**dir**  
or  
**dir /p**
3. Remove the FRUIT directory by typing the following at the command prompt:  
**rd fruit**
4. To verify that the FRUIT directory has been removed, type the following at the command prompt:  
**dir**  
or  
**dir /p**  
The FRUIT directory should not appear in the directory list.

## Formatting a Floppy Disk

When you purchase new floppy disks, you must generally format them before you can use them. Practice formatting a floppy disk now.

---

**Caution** The data on the disk you format will be erased, so make sure you select a disk that does not contain information you may need later.

---

► **To format a floppy disk**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**format a:**

If you want to format a disk that fits only in drive B, type **format b:** at the command prompt and insert a disk in drive B when MS-DOS prompts you to do so.



This command specifies that you want to format the disk in drive A. When you press ENTER, the following message appears:

```
Insert new diskette for drive A:
and press ENTER when ready...
```

2. Insert the disk you want to format in drive A label-side up. Then close the drive door or make sure the disk clicks into the drive. When you are ready, press ENTER. The following message appears:

```
Checking existing disk format
Saving UNFORMAT information
```

As it formats the disk, MS-DOS displays the percentage of the disk that has been formatted. When the format is complete, the following message appears.

```
Volume label (11 characters, ENTER for none)?
```

3. A volume label is a name for your disk. You can give your disk any name you like, as long as it has 11 or fewer characters. For this exercise, type **practice** and then press ENTER. Information similar to the following appears:

```
1213952 bytes total disk space
1213952 bytes available on disk

      512 bytes in each allocation unit.
    2371 allocation units available on disk.
```

```
Volume Serial Number is 1E49-15E2
```

```
Format another (Y/N)?
```

4. If you have another disk to format, press Y. If not, press N.

## Summary

This concludes the MS-DOS tutorial. During this tutorial, you learned how to:

- View the contents of a directory by using the **dir** command.
- Change directories by using the **cd** command.
- Create directories by using the **md** command.
- Delete directories by using the **rd** command.
- Change drives by specifying the drive letter followed by a colon.
- Copy files by using the **copy** command.
- Rename files by using the **ren** command.
- Delete files by using the **del** command.
- Format a floppy disk by using the **format** command.

For more information about files, directories, drives, and paths, see the following sections. For more information about the commands discussed in this tutorial, use MS-DOS Help. Instructions for using MS-DOS Help are in the section “Getting Help” later in this chapter.

## How MS-DOS Organizes Information

The preceding tutorial introduced the commands you will most often use to find and move information. It also introduces some important terms—*file*, *directory*, and *drive*—that you need to understand to use MS-DOS effectively. This section provides more information about these terms and explains how MS-DOS organizes information.

### Files

A file is the primary unit of storage on your computer. A file enables MS-DOS to distinguish one collection of information from another. For example, when you use a word-processing program to write a letter, you store the letter in its own file. Every file has a name, which generally indicates what type of information the file contains.

The files on your computer come from various sources; not all of them are created by you. Some files come with MS-DOS, while others come with applications such as a word processor. These files contain code and other information that is necessary to make your computer and applications run. For example, each of the files that comes with MS-DOS contains information about a specific subject. Many of these files contain the code for MS-DOS commands. Like the files you create, each file in your DOS directory has a name that reflects the contents of the file.

Before long, there will be hundreds or even thousands of files on your computer. This can make it difficult to locate specific files—just as it would be difficult to find a particular knife if you stored all the items in your kitchen in one large box.

### Directories

Storing groups of files in different directories makes files easier to find. For example, all the files that come with MS-DOS are stored in a single directory that is usually named DOS. If you ever need to locate an MS-DOS file, you know where to look. Like files, directories can be created by you or by an application. For example, if you use your computer to store files that contain recipes, you might want to create a directory called RECIPES, so these files will be easier to find.

## The Current Directory

Directories would be hard to use if you didn't know which one you were in. How, you might ask, can you be "in" a directory? Think of your computer as a store. When your computer is off, you are outside the store. When you turn your computer on, you step into the store. As long as you are in the store, you are in one of its aisles and can easily find the goods on that aisle. In the same sense, as long as your computer is on, you are in a directory and can easily find the files in that directory. MS-DOS indicates which directory you are in by displaying the directory's name in the command prompt. For example, the following command prompt indicates that you are in the DOS directory:

```
C:\DOS>
```

The following command prompt indicates that you are in the RECIPES directory:

```
C:\RECIPES>
```

The directory you are in is called the *current directory*. Knowing which directory is current helps you find files and helps you move from one directory to another more easily.

You do not have to be in the directory that contains the files you want to use, but the commands you type will be shorter if you are. When you become comfortable with typing longer commands, you might rely less on being in the directory that contains the files you want to work with.

## Subdirectories

Directories can contain other directories. A directory within another directory is called a *subdirectory*. By creating subdirectories, you can better categorize your files. For example, suppose you have 75 recipe files in your RECIPES directory. If you are looking for a particular file and cannot remember the name of it, you would have to search through the names of all 75 files. You can avoid this problem by creating subdirectories in the RECIPES directory and storing the files in the appropriate subdirectory. For example, you could create subdirectories called BREADS, ENTREES, and DESSERTS, each of which might contain about 25 files.

## The Root Directory

Strictly speaking, all directories are subdirectories, except for one, which is called the *root directory*. In this guide, the term *subdirectory* is used only to emphasize the relationship between two directories. The root directory is the starting point

from which all other directories branch out. The root directory does not have a name. Instead, it is represented by a backslash (\). When the root directory is the current directory, the command prompt appears similar to the following:

```
C:\>
```

This prompt indicates that you are in the root directory of drive C. For more information about drives, see the following section.

Because the root directory is the basis for all other directories, you cannot delete it. Avoid unnecessarily storing files in the root directory. There is a limit to the number of files and directories the root directory can hold. Besides, it's a good idea to get into the habit of using directories to organize files.

## Drives

Just as a directory is a group of files, a drive, which is always represented by a drive letter, is a group of directories. Drives are usually associated with a piece of hardware called a disk. A *disk* is a flat piece of metal or plastic on which data is stored. The most common types of disks are the *hard disk*, which is inside your computer, and the *floppy disk* and *compact disc*, which you insert into a slot either in or next to your computer.

In most cases, a drive is a grouping of all the directories on a disk. A drive is named with a single letter. Your first floppy disk drive is drive A. Your second floppy disk drive, if you have one, is drive B. Your hard disk, or at least part of it, is called drive C.

The following command prompt indicates that drive C is the current drive and that the root directory, represented by a backslash (\), is the current directory.

```
C:\>
```

If the current drive is drive A and the current directory on that drive is SAMPLES, the command prompt would appear similar to the following:

```
A:\SAMPLES>
```

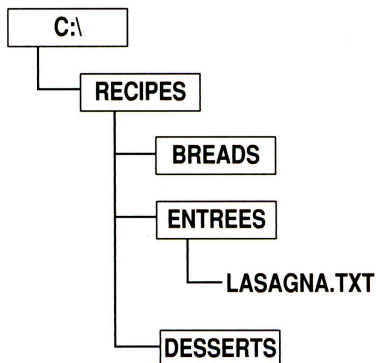
For information about changing the current drive, see the tutorial earlier in this chapter.

If you have more than one hard disk or you use compact (CD-ROM) discs or a network, you will have additional drive letters (D, E, and so on). Every drive, no matter what type it is, has one root directory.

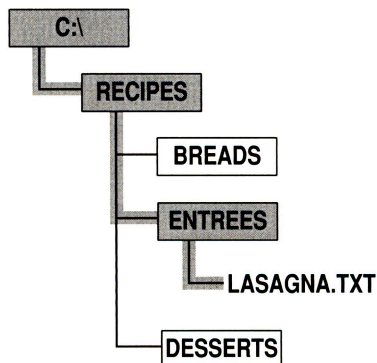


## Using Paths to Specify the Location of Files

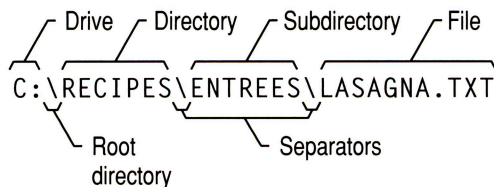
A *path* is the course that leads from the root directory of a drive to the file you want to use. For example, suppose that drive C has the following directory structure:



To access the LASAGNA.TXT file in the ENTREES directory, MS-DOS must go from the root directory through the RECIPES directory to the ENTREES directory, as shown in the following illustration:



To specify the same path at the command prompt, you would type it as shown in the following illustration:





This is the path to the LASAGNA.TXT file. The first letter and colon (C:) represent the drive the file is on. The first backslash (\) represents the root directory. The second backslash separates the RECIPES directory from the ENTREES subdirectory. The third backslash separates the ENTREES subdirectory from the filename, LASAGNA.TXT. This path is called a *full path* because it contains all the available information about the location of the LASAGNA.TXT file.

To delete the LASAGNA.TXT file by specifying the full path, you would type the following at the command prompt:

```
del c:\recipes\entrees\lasagna.txt
```

Another kind of path is a *relative path*. The relative path of a file depends on which directory is current. For example, suppose your current directory is RECIPES. Your command prompt would look like the following:

```
C:\RECIPES>
```

To delete the LASAGNA.TXT file from the ENTREES directory by specifying the relative path, you would type the following at the command prompt:

```
del entrees\lasagna.txt
```

This command does exactly the same thing that the previous **del** command does—it deletes the LASAGNA.TXT file. However, the path shown in this command specifies the location of the LASAGNA.TXT file relative to the current directory, RECIPES. You don't have to include the drive letter and colon (C:) in the command because drive C is the current drive. You don't have to include the RECIPES directory in the command because it is the current directory.

MS-DOS recognizes paths up to 67 characters long (including the drive letter, colon, and backslashes).

## Naming Files and Directories

Every file and directory, except for the root directory on each drive, must have a name. The following list summarizes the rules for naming files and directories. File and directory names:

- Can be up to eight characters long. In addition, you can include an extension up to three characters long. For more information about extensions, see the following section, "Using Extensions."
- Are not case-sensitive. It does not matter whether you use uppercase or lowercase letters when you type them.

- Can contain only the letters A through Z, the numbers 0 through 9, and the following special characters: underscore (\_), caret (^), dollar sign (\$), tilde (~), exclamation point (!), number sign (#), percent sign (%), ampersand (&), hyphen (-), braces ({ }), at sign (@), single quotation mark ('), apostrophe ('), and parentheses (). No other special characters are acceptable.
- Cannot contain spaces, commas, backslashes, or periods (except the period that separates the name from the extension).
- Cannot be identical to the name of another file or subdirectory in the same directory.

## Using Extensions

Most filenames have two parts: the name and the extension. These parts are separated by a period. For example, LETTERS.TXT is a valid filename. The name (before the period) can be up to eight characters long and should reflect the contents of the file. The extension (after the period) can be up to three characters long and indicates what type of information the file contains. Extensions can also be used in directory names, but are not commonly used for that purpose.

The following are examples of commonly used extensions for filenames:

- .EXE, .COM, or .BAT  
These extensions are used for files that contain programs. If you type the name of a file containing one of these extensions at the command prompt, MS-DOS will run the program that the file contains.
- .TXT  
This extension is commonly used for unformatted text files.
- .SYS  
This extension is commonly used for device drivers, which are files that enable your computer to communicate with hardware devices.

Many applications name files using an extension that is unique to that application. It is generally best to use the extension that an application specifies, because the extension helps the application identify the files that it created.

## Using Wildcards

If you want to carry out a task for a group of files whose names have something in common, you don't have to use the same command repeatedly for each filename in the group. You can use one or more *wildcards* to specify groups of files. A wildcard is a character that can represent one or more characters in a filename.

MS-DOS recognizes two wildcards:

- The asterisk (\*) represents one or more characters that a group of files has in common.
- The question mark (?) represents a single character that a group of files has in common.

You can use wildcards to replace all or part of a file's name or extension. The following table shows examples of wildcards.

Wildcard	What it represents	Examples
*.TXT	All files with a .TXT extension	JULY93.TXT, LASAGNA.TXT
REPORT.*	All files named REPORT with any extension	REPORT.TXT, REPORT.WRI
M*.*	All files beginning with the letter M, regardless of their extension	MEMO.TXT, MARCH.XLS
???.*	All files having 3-letter names, with any or no extension	SUN.BMP, WIN.INI, AUG

You can include multiple wildcards in a command. For example, the following command lists all the files from the current directory:

**dir \*.\***

---

**Note** If you use the asterisk (\*) wildcard when you specify a filename, MS-DOS ignores letters that come after the asterisk up to the period. For example, typing **\*m.exe** would have the same result as typing **\*.exe**. If you use the asterisk in the extension, MS-DOS ignores the letters that appear afterward. For example, typing **myapp.\*xe** would have the same result as typing **myapp.\***.

---

## Getting Help

There are two types of online help for MS-DOS commands:

- MS-DOS Help, which is a complete online reference for MS-DOS commands, including syntax, notes, and examples
- Command Line Help, which displays the syntax of a command without leaving the command line

This section explains how to use both types of help.

## Using MS-DOS Help

MS-DOS Help provides a complete online reference to MS-DOS commands. You can start MS-DOS Help in two ways: you can display the table of contents and choose a topic from it, or you can bypass the table of contents and display information about a specific command.

### ► To start MS-DOS Help and choose a topic from the table of contents

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**help**

The MS-DOS Help table of contents appears.

2. If you are using a mouse, click the name of the command you want information about. If the command does not appear on your screen, click the arrow at the bottom of the scroll bar on the right side of your screen until the command comes into view.

If you are using a keyboard, press the key that represents the first letter of the command you want information about. The first command beginning with that letter is selected. If this is not the command you want, continue pressing the key until the command you want is selected, and then press ENTER. You can also use the TAB, UP ARROW, DOWN ARROW, PAGE UP, and PAGE DOWN keys to move between topics in the table of contents.

### ► To start MS-DOS Help and display information about a specific command

- At the command prompt, type **help** followed by a space and the name of the command you want information about.

For example, for help with the **copy** command, type the following at the command prompt:

**help copy**

Most commands have three associated topics: Syntax, Notes, and Examples. When you choose a command from the table of contents or type **help** followed by a command name at the command prompt, the Syntax topic appears first. If the topic has associated Notes or Examples topics, you can choose those topics by carrying out the following procedure.

### ► To choose Notes or Examples

- If you are using a mouse, click the Notes or Examples button at the top of the help screen.

If you are using a keyboard, press N for Notes or E for Examples. When the cursor is on the Notes or Examples button, press ENTER.



When you are in a Notes or Examples topic, you can return to the Syntax topic in two ways:

► **To choose Syntax**

- If you are using a mouse, click the Syntax button at the top of the help screen.  
If you are using a keyboard, press S for Syntax. When the cursor is on the Syntax button, press ENTER.

The status bar at the bottom of the MS-DOS Help screen can help you navigate through the Help system.

- To return to the MS-DOS Help table of contents, press ALT+C, or choose the <ALT+C=Contents> button with your mouse.
- To view the next topic in MS-DOS Help, press ALT+N, or choose the <ALT+N=Next> button with your mouse.
- To view topics that were displayed previously, press ALT+B, or choose the <ALT+B=Back> button with your mouse.

For more information about using MS-DOS Help, press F1.

You can search for a specific string of text in MS-DOS Help by using the Find command on the Search menu. The Find command conducts a full-text search—that is, it searches through all the topics in MS-DOS Help.

► **To search for text**

1. From the Search menu, choose Find.

The Find dialog box appears.

2. In the Find What box, specify the text you want to search for.

If you want to make the search case sensitive, select the Match Upper/Lowercase check box.

If you want to find only whole-word occurrences of the search text, select the Whole Word check box.

3. Choose the OK button.

MS-DOS Help searches forward from the cursor position for the first occurrence of the text you specify. When it finds an occurrence of the text, it displays the topic in which the text was found.

4. To find the next occurrence of the search text, press F3.



► **To quit MS-DOS Help**

- If you are using a mouse, open the File menu by clicking its name in the menu bar. Then, choose the Exit command by clicking its name on the File menu.

If you are using a keyboard, press ALT, F, X.

## Using Command Line Help

You can get information about the syntax of a command without starting MS-DOS Help. This information is less detailed than MS-DOS Help, and appears directly at the command prompt.

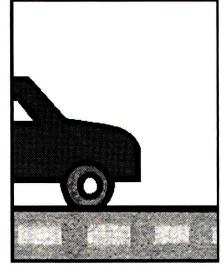
► **To display the syntax of a command**

- At the command prompt, type the name of the command followed by a space and the **/?** switch.

For example, to view the syntax of the **dir** command, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir /?**

# Managing Your System



MS-DOS includes several programs that you can use to manage and protect your data and improve the performance of your computer. Microsoft Backup helps you increase available hard disk space and protect your data. Microsoft Anti-Virus minimizes the possibility that your data will be damaged by a computer virus. The Microsoft Defragmenter and SMARTDrive programs minimize the time it takes your computer to access files on your hard disk. Microsoft Undelete recovers files you may have accidentally deleted.

To keep your computer in top working order, use these programs on a regular basis. When you determine which tasks are necessary to manage your computer, consider the following.

To ensure that	Do this	For details, see
Lost clusters aren't taking up space on your hard disk	Run ScanDisk.	The chapter "Freeing Disk Space."
You minimize the time your computer spends reading data from your hard disk	Use the SMARTDrive program.	"Using SMARTDrive" later in this chapter.
Disk space is freed and files aren't damaged if your hard disk fails	Run Backup.	"Backing Up Your Files" later in this chapter.
Viruses don't damage data	Run Anti-Virus.	"Protecting Your Computer from Viruses" later in this chapter.
Your computer can access files quickly and efficiently	Defragment your hard disk.	"Using the Defragmenter" later in this chapter.
You can recover files that you accidentally delete	Set up Undelete.	"Recovering Deleted Files" later in this chapter.
Your computer's hard disk is not damaged.	Run ScanDisk.	MS-DOS Help by typing <b>help scandisk</b> .

Managing your computer need not be complicated or time-consuming. It can be as simple as automatically searching for viruses when you start your computer, backing up your files once a week, and occasionally using the Defragmenter to defragment your hard disk. No matter what your computer management plan, carry it out at regular intervals.

## Backing Up Your Files

Backing up your files safeguards them against loss if your hard disk fails or you accidentally overwrite or delete data. Using Backup, you can return to older file versions, move backed up files off your hard disk, and transfer files easily from one computer to another.

Hard disk failure can render all your data inaccessible. It takes an average of 2,000 hours of work to replace the data on the average hard disk. Backup helps you protect your data and your investment of time and effort. Within minutes, you can restore a hard disk you've backed up.

## Overview of Backup

MS-DOS includes two backup programs: Backup for MS-DOS, a program you can run from the MS-DOS command prompt, and Backup for Windows, a program you can run from Microsoft Windows. For instructions on starting these programs, see "Using Backup" later in this chapter.

### Backup Help

Backup includes extensive online help for commands, procedures, and dialog boxes. Online help also includes instructions for using the help system.

#### ► To get help

- Press F1 when Backup displays the screen, window, or dialog box you want more information about.

### Backup Media

You can back up your files to the following types of media:

#### ■ Floppy disks

Backup can back up files to floppy disks in standard MS-DOS format or in Backup format. Backup format stores more data faster and in less space.

#### ■ MS-DOS devices

If you can copy files to a device by using MS-DOS commands, Backup supports that device. For example, Backup supports network drives and removable drives such as Bernoulli™ drives.

## Types of Backup

You can back up your data in three ways.

A *full backup* backs up all the files that you select before starting the backup. A full backup can include all the files on your hard disk, but more commonly includes all files of one type, all files on a particular drive, or all files in one or more directories.

An *incremental backup* backs up only files that have changed since your last full or incremental backup. Because an incremental backup backs up only files that have changed, it quickly and fully protects you against data loss.

A *differential backup* backs up only the files that have changed since your last full backup. A differential backup may take a little longer to complete than an incremental backup. On the other hand, you need to keep only the last full and the last differential backup sets to restore files.

The following table describes the purpose, advantages, and disadvantages of each type of backup:

Backup Type	Purpose	Advantages	Disadvantages
Full	Ensures that you have a copy of every file that you might need to restore.	Can restore any file easily.	Backing up a large amount of data can be time-consuming and require more space on backup media than other methods.
Incremental	Records changes since the last full or incremental backup. Preserves multiple versions of a file.	Is fastest if you work with many different files. Requires less space on your backup media.	You need to keep each incremental backup (between full backups) because the backups build on each other.
Differential	Records changes since the last full backup. Maintains the latest version of your files.	Is fastest if you work with the same set of files each day. Requires less space on your backup media. In the event of hard disk failure, you'll have fewer backups to restore.	Can become large if you work with many different files. Cannot retrieve previous versions of a file.



For a backup strategy to be effective, you should back up your data in regular cycles. A *backup cycle* begins when you fully back up your files and includes all subsequent incremental or differential backups. A new backup cycle begins when you perform the next full backup of the same set of files. Backup cycles for different groups of files may be of different durations, depending on the types of files you back up and how you use them.

## **Backup Strategies**

To establish an effective backup strategy, decide how you want to implement a backup cycle. Your strategy will depend largely on how you work with files.

### **If You Work with the Same Files Repeatedly**

If you work with the same files each day, you may want to combine full backups with differential backups. The differential backup is ideal if you work with the same database or spreadsheet files each day and don't need to keep old versions of your files.

Begin your backup cycle by fully backing up your files. Then, at regular intervals, make differential backups of your files. Each differential backup records only the changes that have occurred since your last full backup. You keep only the last differential backup.

Although you can copy new backup files over old ones each time you perform a differential backup, it's best to alternate between two sets of disks or other backup media. If a backup fails, you would still have a complete copy of the previous backup. Even if you use two sets of floppy disks, this strategy minimizes the number of disks required to implement your backup strategy.

### **If You Work with Different Files**

If you work with different files each day, you may want to combine full backups with incremental backups. The incremental backup works best if you create new files, such as correspondence, every day.

Begin your backup cycle by fully backing up your files. Then, at regular intervals, make incremental backups of your files. Each time you back up your files incrementally, Backup records any changes that were made since your last incremental backup. Save the floppy disks from each incremental backup until you complete the cycle by performing another full backup.

### **If You Need to Keep Older Versions of Files**

If you need access to older versions of your files, combine full backups with incremental backups, as described in the previous section, "If You Work with Different Files." With Backup, you can easily choose which version you want to restore. For information about selecting which files to restore, see "Restoring Files" later in this chapter.



For more information about backup strategies, carry out one of the following procedures:

- If you are using Backup for Windows, choose Index from the Help menu. When the index of help topics appears, press the PAGE DOWN key. Under the Automating Backups section, choose Designing Backup Routines.
- If you are using Backup for MS-DOS, choose Backup from the Help menu. Press the DOWN ARROW key until the words Backup Type are highlighted, and then press ENTER.

## Using Setup Files

Before you begin a backup, you must select files, settings, and options. You can store these selections in *setup files*. Setup files simplify the backup process by providing a standard set of options that reflect all the selections you made for a particular backup, including:

- Which drives to back up
- What type of media to back up to
- Which files to back up
- What type of backup to perform
- Which options you selected in the options dialog box

You can create up to 50 setup files and save them with different names. By using setup files, you can perform backups routinely with a minimum of time and effort. By distributing carefully prepared setup files to other Backup users in your organization, others can benefit from a comprehensive backup strategy you've developed.

Backup uses setup files to identify which files to back up and what type of backup to perform. If you have not created a setup file, you can use the DEFAULT.SET file to control your backups.

The DEFAULT.SET file contains the default settings that appear in the main screen when you start Backup. The file also contains information that Backup gathered during the compatibility test, such as the size of the disks used in your floppy disk drive(s).

If you have not created setup files or you don't specify a setup file, the DEFAULT.SET file is selected in the Setup File text box when you open the Backup dialog box.

---

**Note** To change the contents of a setup file, carry out the procedure described in the Setup Files topic in Backup Help.

---

For instructions on using setup files, carry out one of the following procedures:

- If you are using Backup for Windows, choose Index from the Help menu. When the index of help topics appears, press the PAGE DOWN key. Under the Miscellaneous section, choose Setup Files.
- If you are using Backup for MS-DOS, choose Index from the Help menu. When the Backup Help Topics screen appears, press the PAGE DOWN key until the Backing Up section comes into view. Under Backing Up, choose Backup Commands and Options. When the Backup Commands and Options screen appears, choose any of the first three topics.

## Backup Sets

Every full, incremental, or differential backup results in a *backup set*, which Backup creates and writes to floppy disks or other storage media. You can create any number of backup sets during a backup cycle. A backup set also includes a backup catalog, which is described in the following section.

## Backup Catalogs

As part of the backup process, Backup creates a *backup catalog* that contains information about the files you backed up. When you need to restore one or more files, you can load the backup catalog and easily select specific files from a backup set. The backup catalog includes the following information:

- The backed-up disk's directory structure
- The names, sizes, and attributes of the directories or files you selected
- The total number of files you backed up
- The total size of the backup
- The name of the setup file you used
- The date the backup was made

Backup gives each backup catalog a unique filename that helps you identify a backup set. Each character in the catalog's filename contains information about a particular backup set. For example, consider a typical catalog filename such as CD20823A.FUL. Reading from left to right, the characters in the filename mean the following.

Character	Meaning
C	The first drive backed up in this set.
D	The last drive backed up in this set. (If only one drive was backed up, this letter will be the same as the first.)
2	The last digit of the year, as determined by your computer's date setting. In this example, the year is 1992.

Character	Meaning
08	The month the backup set was created, as determined by your computer's date setting.
23	The day of the month the backup set was created, as determined by your computer's date setting.
A	The position of this backup in a sequence of backups. If you perform more than one backup of the same drive(s) on the same day and you set the Keep Old Backup Catalogs option to On, Backup assigns a letter from A to Z to indicate the order in which the backups were performed. If you set the Keep Old Backup Catalogs option to Off, this letter alternates between A and B.
FUL	The backup type—FUL indicates a full backup, INC indicates an incremental backup, and DIF indicates a differential backup.

You can easily locate the catalog for a specific backup set by using the information contained in the catalog filenames, even if your directory contains many catalog files.

Each time you perform a full backup using a specific setup file, Backup creates a *master catalog*. The master catalog keeps track of all the backup catalogs that were created during the backup cycle. When you begin a new backup cycle by performing the next full backup, Backup creates a new master catalog.

You use the master catalog if you need to restore a complete backup cycle. When you load the master catalog, Backup automatically merges the catalogs of all the backups that you performed during the backup cycle. Then you can choose to restore the latest version or an earlier version of each backed-up file.

You can also choose whether you want to keep all the old catalogs or only the current catalogs on your hard disk. The catalogs you choose to keep remain part of your backup sets.

When you back up files, Backup places one copy of the backup catalog on your hard disk and a second copy on the medium that contains your backup set. If you delete the catalog from your hard disk or the catalog on your hard disk is damaged, you can retrieve the catalog from the backup set you created.

You may have to rebuild a catalog if the catalog on your hard disk is unusable and one of the following has happened:

- The backup medium that contains the copy of the catalog is no longer available.
- The catalog file on the backup medium is damaged.
- Part of the backup set is damaged or missing.

For instructions on retrieving or rebuilding a backup catalog, carry out one of the following procedures:

- If you are using Backup for Windows, choose Index from the Help menu. When the index of help topics appears, press the PAGE DOWN key. Under the Menus section, choose Catalog Menu.
- If you are using Backup for MS-DOS, choose the Restore button in the main screen. In the Restore screen, choose the Catalog button. The Select Catalog screen appears. Choose the Retrieve or Rebuild button, and then press F1.

## Ensuring a Reliable Backup

The first time you run Backup, you are prompted to carry out a compatibility test, which verifies that Backup is configured correctly for your computer. The compatibility test is Backup's primary means of ensuring that your backups will be reliable. However, Backup also offers the following options to further ensure reliable backups:

- Verify Backup Data
- Use Error Correction
- Compare

For instructions on running the compatibility test, see "Running the Compatibility Test" later in this chapter.

### Verify Backup Data

If you choose the Verify Backup Data option when you back up your files, Backup writes data to the backup medium, compares it to the data in the source file, and then verifies the data by reading it back from the backup medium. Because data verification dramatically slows performance, you might want to make sure Verify Backup Data is turned off. However, it is recommended that you use some level of data verification, such as Compare, to help ensure the reliability of your backups. For instructions on using the Verify Backup Data option, see "Selecting Backup Options" later in this chapter.



## Use Error Correction

If you choose the Use Error Correction option when you back up your files, Backup adds coding information to the backup media to improve your chances of restoring the data if the backup set is damaged. An error correction code (ECC) is created during the backup and is used only if necessary while the files are being restored. For example, if a floppy disk is damaged by a scratch or thumbprint but the backup set was made with Use Error Correction on, there is a good chance that Backup will be able to restore the data. For instructions on using the Use Error Correction option, see “Selecting Backup Options” later in this chapter.

## Compare

After you have created a backup set, you can use the Compare command to verify that the information contained in your backup set is identical to the data on your hard disk and that the data can be restored. Compare provides maximum data security by checking the data in the backup set against the source data on the hard disk. For instructions on using Compare, choose the Compare button from the main screen or window, and then press F1.

## Using Backup

This section describes how to start a backup, use setup files, select which files to back up, and select Backup options.

---

**Note** If you want to share backup sets between Norton Backup™ and Microsoft Backup, contact Symantec™ for an updated version of Norton Backup.

---

## Starting a Backup

The first time you start Backup, you will receive a message about running a compatibility test. Backup uses the test to adjust its configuration to your computer's hardware. This ensures that your backups will be reliable. You should run the compatibility test before you back up files for the first time or whenever you change your computer's hardware configuration. For more information, see “Running the Compatibility Test” later in this chapter.

If you are using Backup for MS-DOS, carry out the following procedure. If you are using Backup for Windows, skip to the next procedure.

---

**Note** Backup program files must be located on your hard disk. You cannot start Backup from a floppy disk.

---



► **To start a backup by using Backup for MS-DOS**

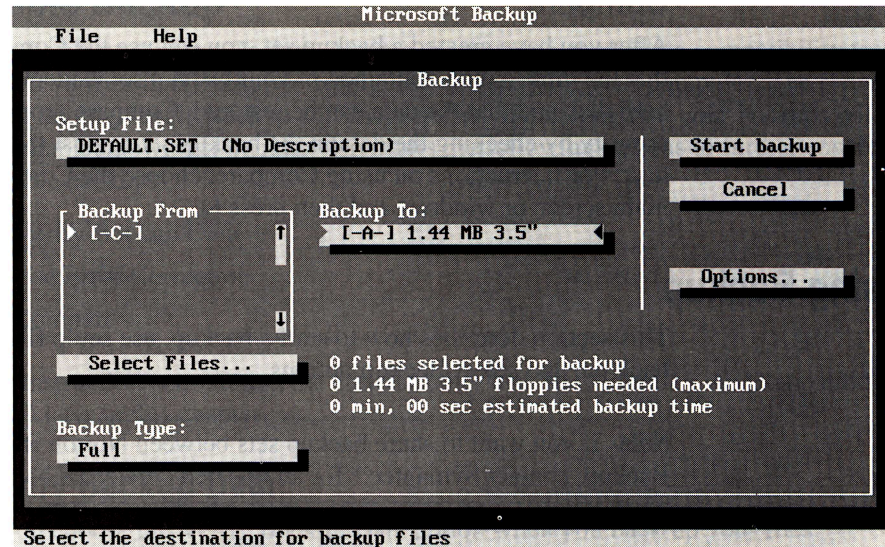
1. To start Backup, type the following at the command prompt:

**msbackup**

If a message about running the compatibility test appears when you start Backup, see “Running the Compatibility Test” later in this chapter. If you choose not to run the compatibility test the first time you start Backup, you will receive this message each time you start Backup until you run the test.

2. Choose the Backup button.

The following screen appears:



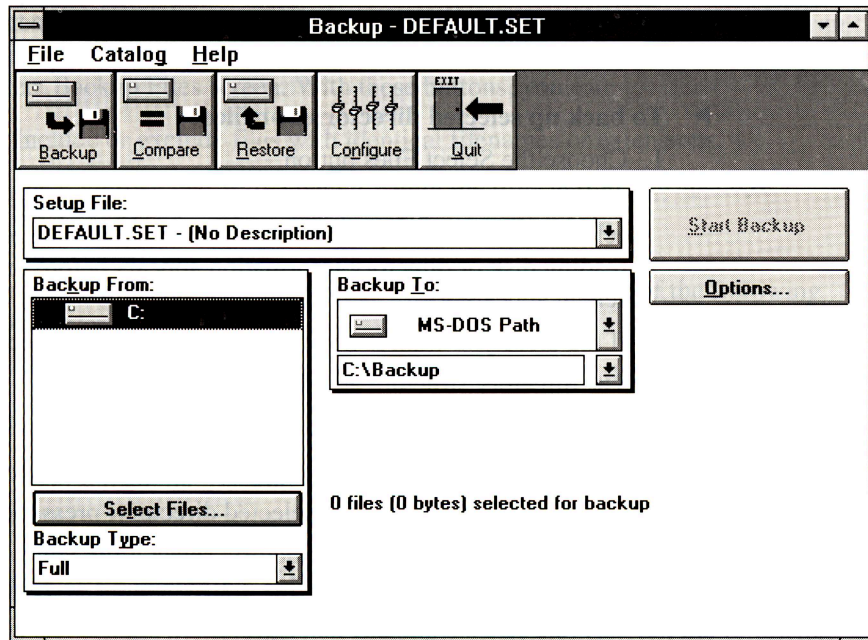
3. For an overview of Backup, press F1. After the Backup screen appears, press PAGE DOWN until “Overview of Backup” appears. Press TAB until the topic is selected, and then press ENTER.

If you are using Backup for Windows, carry out the following procedure.

► **To start a backup by using Backup for Windows**

1. Choose the Backup icon from the Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager.  
Or choose the Backup command from the Tools menu in File Manager.

The following screen appears:



2. For an overview of Backup, press F1.

---

**Note** If a message about running the compatibility test appears when you start Backup, see “Running the Compatibility Test” later in this chapter.

---

## Selecting Which Files to Back Up

You can specify which files Backup should back up by selecting one or more drives and indicating which files on those drives to include or exclude from a backup. You can select your hard disk(s) or network drives.

### ► To back up all the files on a drive

1. In the Backup From box, select the drive that contains the files you want to back up, and then press the SPACEBAR.

A message appears stating that Backup is reading disk or directory information.

When Backup has completed reading the disk, “All Files” appears next to the drive letter you selected.

2. Repeat step 1 for each drive you want to back up.

Instead of backing up entire drives, you can use Backup to back up selected directories or files.

► **To back up selected directories or files**

1. Choose the Select Files button.

The Select Backup Files screen appears. (Backup may not have read the disk selected in the Backup From list. If it hasn't, a message stating that Backup is reading disk or directory information appears before the Select Backup Files screen appears.)

2. If the drive you want is not displayed, select the correct drive.

The directory structure and files on the drive appear.

3. Select the directory that contains files you want to back up.

Backup displays a list of the files that are in the directory you selected.

4. To select all the files in the selected directory, press the SPACEBAR.

To specify some files in a directory, select a file you want to back up, and then press the SPACEBAR. Repeat this until you have selected all the files in the directory that you want to back up.

A mark appears next to the directory name and the names of all the files in the directory that you selected.

---

**Note** If all the files are already selected, you can cancel the selection by pressing the SPACEBAR, or you can return to the previous screen by pressing ESC. The message "All Files" appears after the selected drive letter. Press the SPACEBAR to clear the selection, and then select individual files as described in the previous procedure. You can also clear selected files individually or by directory by pressing the SPACEBAR.

---

5. Repeat steps 2 through 4, as appropriate, until you have selected all the files you want to back up.
6. When you finish selecting files, choose the OK button.

---

**Note** If you select individual files, and later run an incremental or differential backup, Backup will back up only the files you selected, even if other files have been added or changed. If you want Backup to include new files or files that have changed but were not originally selected, make sure you select the entire directory.

---



Instead of selecting individual files or directories of files to back up, you can select groups of files by using the Include, Exclude, and Special buttons on the Select Backup Files screen. With these buttons, you can:

- Include or exclude files with identical filenames or extensions.
- Back up files that were created within the time period you specify.
- Exclude files from a backup based on their attributes.

For instructions on selecting groups of files, carry out one of the following procedures:

- If you are using Backup for Windows, choose the Select Files button in the main window, and then press F1.
- If you are using Backup for MS-DOS, choose the Backup button from the main screen; the Backup screen appears. Choose the Select Files button, and then press F1.

## Selecting Backup Options

You can change the settings that Backup uses by carrying out the following procedure.

### ► To select backup options

1. In the Backup dialog box, choose the Options button.  
A Backup options dialog box appears.
2. Select the option you want, and then press the SPACEBAR. Repeat this until you have selected all the options you want.  
A mark appears in the check box beside each option you selected.
3. When you finish selecting Backup options, choose the OK button.

For information about Backup options, press F1 when a Backup options dialog box is displayed.

## Running the Compatibility Test

Before you back up files for the first time, Backup prompts you to:

- Run a compatibility test to ensure that Backup is configured correctly for your system's hardware.
- Accept the default backup configuration or modify it to meet your needs. For more information about modifying the default configuration, see "Configuring Backup" later in this chapter.

Running the compatibility test ensures that Backup is configured to work reliably with your hardware. You should run this test before you perform your first backup and again whenever you install new hardware or change your existing hardware configuration.

---

**Note** If your computer does not pass the compatibility test, backups you make may not be reliable.

---

The compatibility test consists of a small backup to a device you select. The test verifies that Backup is correctly installed and that it can back up and restore files properly. It also checks for hardware incompatibilities.

Before you start the test, make sure you have two floppy disks available. The disks must be the correct size and capacity for the floppy disk drive you intend to use, but do not have to be formatted.

If you use Backup for MS-DOS, carry out the following procedure to run the compatibility test the first time you use it.

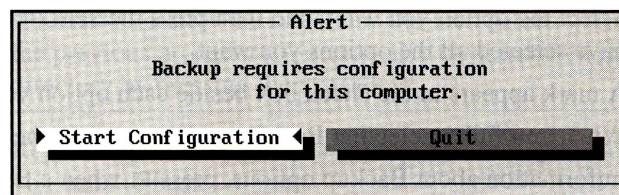
If you use Backup for Windows, carry out the procedure that follows this one.

► **To run the compatibility test the first time you use Backup for MS-DOS**

1. Start Backup by typing the following at the command prompt:

**msbackup**

The following dialog box appears:



2. To start the compatibility test, press ENTER.  
Follow the instructions on your screen.

If you use Backup for Windows, carry out the following procedure to run the compatibility test.



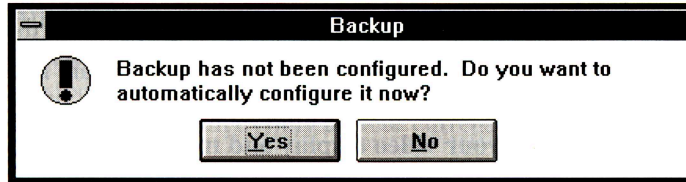
► **To run the compatibility test the first time you use Backup for Windows**

1. Start Backup by choosing the Backup icon from the Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager.

A dialog box appears, informing you that the compatibility test has not been performed.

2. To start the compatibility test, choose the OK button.

The following dialog box appears:



3. To configure Backup, choose the Yes button.

A dialog box appears, prompting you to remove all disks from your drives.

4. Remove any floppy disks from your drives, and choose the OK button.
5. Select the drive you will use to create backup disks, and then choose the Start button.

Backup performs a small backup during the first phase of the compatibility test. During the test, Backup prompts you to insert disks into the drive you chose in step 5. After the test is complete, Backup compares the files it backed up to the files on your hard disk.

## Configuring Backup

If you change your hardware configuration by adding a new video display adapter, mouse, or disk drive to your computer, you may need to change the configuration of Backup. This section describes how to change the configuration of Backup for MS-DOS and Backup for Windows.

### Configuring Backup for MS-DOS

If you use Backup for MS-DOS, you can choose video options, mouse options, and backup devices from the Configure dialog box. You can also run the compatibility test to ensure that Backup is compatible with your hardware. For more information about the compatibility test, see the previous section, "Running the Compatibility Test."

## Configuring the Video Display and Mouse

You can change the following video display and mouse settings:

- The video display adapter and color scheme
- The number of lines displayed on your screen
- Whether the mouse pointer and other screen elements are displayed in text or graphics mode
- The display speed for CGA video adapters
- Whether dialog boxes expand when they appear on the screen
- How the movement of a mouse and its buttons are interpreted

### ► To configure your video display and mouse

1. From the main screen, choose the Configure button.  
The Configure dialog box appears.
2. In the Configure dialog box, choose the Video And Mouse button.  
The Video And Mouse Configuration dialog box appears.
3. Change the configuration of your video display and mouse, as necessary.
4. Choose the OK button.
5. To save your configuration changes so they can be used for later backup sessions, choose the Save button in the Configure dialog box. To apply your configuration changes only to your current backup session, choose the OK button.

For more information about a dialog box and its options, press F1.

## Configuring Backup Devices

You can have Backup automatically configure the drives you use to back up your files or you can configure the drives yourself. Configuring drives is necessary when you install a new drive or use disks that do not match the default size of a drive.

When you specify that your drives should be configured automatically, Backup checks each drive to determine the default size of the disks it supports. Backup also determines if the drive detects whether the drive door is closed.

► **To configure backup devices**

1. From the main screen, choose the Configure button.
2. From the Configure dialog box, choose the Backup Devices button.
  - The Backup Devices dialog box appears.
3. Change the configuration of your backup devices, as necessary.
  - To configure your backup devices automatically, choose the Auto Config button.
4. After you finish configuring your backup devices, choose the OK button.
5. To save your configuration changes so they can be used for later backup sessions, choose the Save button in the Configure dialog box. To apply your configuration changes only to your current backup session, choose the OK button.

For more information about the options in each dialog box, press F1.

## Configuring Backup for Windows

If you use Backup for Windows, you can specify the types of floppy disk drives installed on your computer.

The changes you make take effect immediately and remain in effect until you quit Backup.

You can also run the compatibility test again to ensure that any configuration changes you make to Backup are compatible with your hardware. For more information about the test, see “Running the Compatibility Test” earlier in this chapter.

## Configuring Drives

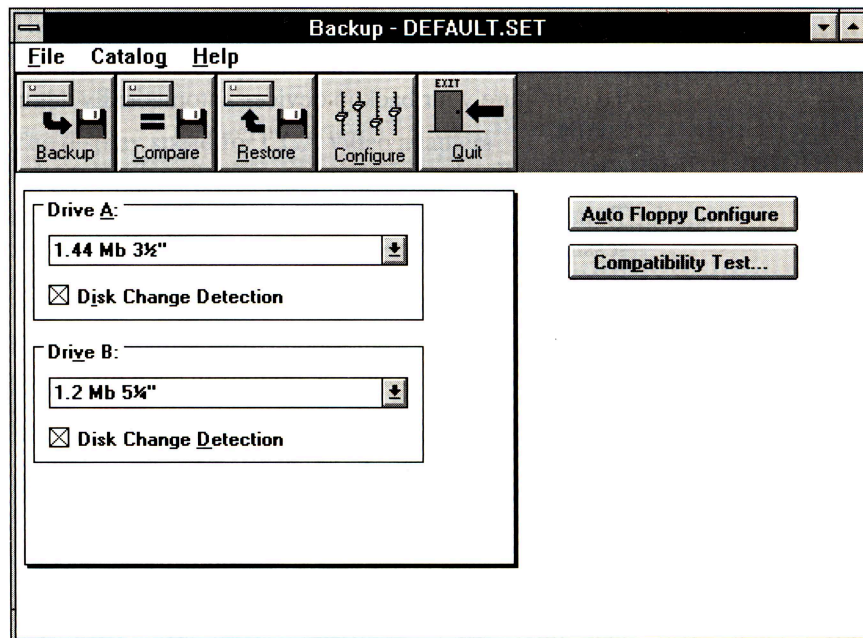
You can have Backup automatically configure the drives you use to back up your files or you can configure the drives yourself. Configuring drives is necessary when you install a new drive or use disks that do not match the default size of a drive.

When you specify that your drives should be configured automatically, Backup checks each drive to determine the default size of the disks it supports. Backup also determines if the drive detects whether the drive door is closed. The ability to detect the state of the drive door is called *disk-change detection*.

► **To configure drives**

1. From the main Backup window, choose the Configure button.

A screen similar to the following appears:



2. If you want Backup to configure your drives automatically, choose the Auto Floppy Configure button. Do not carry out the remaining steps in this procedure.  
If you want to configure drives yourself, select the first drive you want to configure.
3. Open the list box containing drive configurations, and select the configuration you want.
4. If you want to configure another drive, repeat the second half of step 2, and then repeat step 3.
5. To save the configuration for later backup sessions, quit Backup.  
The Exit Backup dialog box appears.
6. Select the Save Configuration check box.
7. Choose the OK button.

## Comparing Files

After you back up files, you can use the Compare command to verify that the backup set contains exact copies of the original files on your hard disk.



Comparing files confirms that the files you've backed up can be restored by the same disk drive that was used to create the backup set. Comparing files also provides a method for determining which files on the hard disk have changed since the backup set was made. You can compare one file, selected files, or all files in a backup set.

It's important to use the Compare command to verify backup sets even if you selected the Verify Backup Data option. By comparing files, you are more likely to detect slight mechanical variations in a disk drive that can affect the reliability of a backup.

For instructions on using Compare, choose the Compare button from the main screen or window, and then press F1.

## Restoring Files

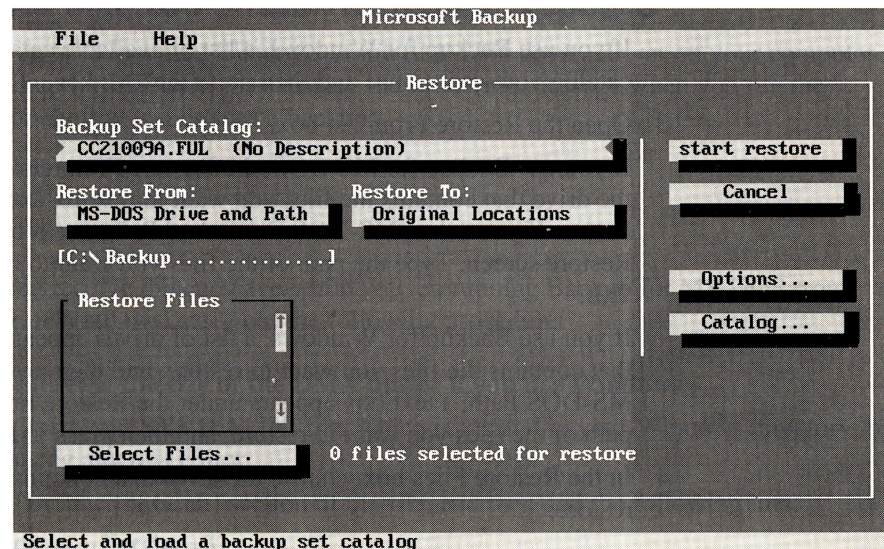
You can easily restore files that you've backed up using Backup. Restoring files transfers them from a backup set to the location you specify. If your hard disk fails, you'll probably want to restore the files to their original location. However, you can also restore files to an alternate location—for example, you could use the Restore command to transfer a backup set to another computer.

To restore a backup set, carry out the following procedure.

### ► To restore a backup set

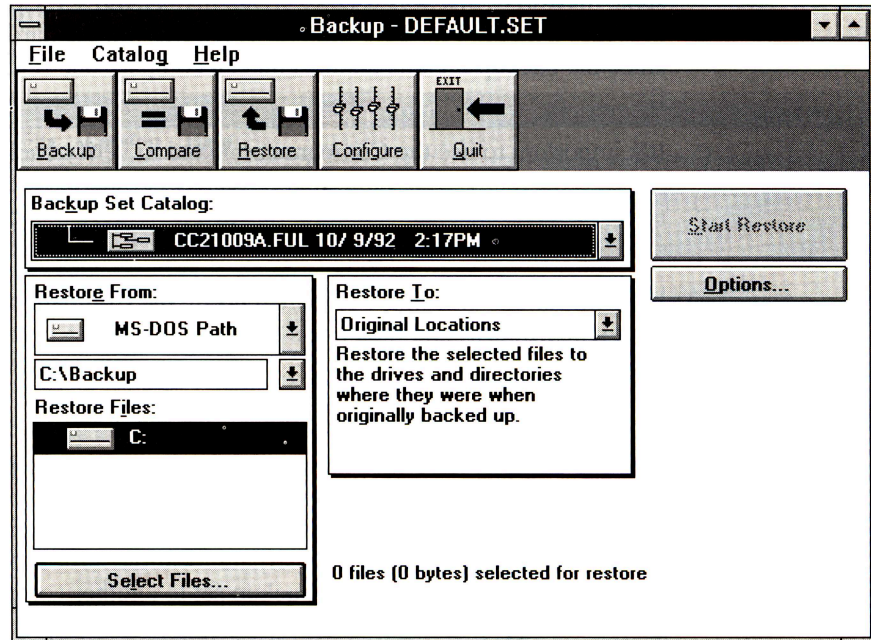
1. In the main Backup screen, choose the Restore button.

If you use Backup for MS-DOS, the following screen appears:





If you use Backup for Windows, the following screen appears:



2. To specify the catalog that identifies the backup set you want to restore, open the Backup Set Catalog list box.

If you use Backup for MS-DOS, the Backup Set Catalog dialog box appears. Use the arrow keys and the SPACEBAR to select the catalog you want to use, and then choose the Load button.

If you use Backup for Windows, a list of available catalogs appears. Select the catalog you want to use and then press the TAB key.

3. Open the Restore From list box.

If you use Backup for MS-DOS, the Restore From dialog box appears. Select the drive that contains the files you want to restore, and then choose the OK button. If you select MS-DOS Drive And Path, a text box appears in the main Restore screen. Type the path of the files you want to restore, and then press TAB.

If you use Backup for Windows, a list of drives appears. Select the drive that contains the files you want to restore, and then press TAB. If you select MS-DOS Path, a text box appears under the Restore From list box. Type the path of the files you want to restore, and then press TAB.

4. In the Restore Files box, choose the drive that contains the files you want to restore.

5. If you want to restore all files on the drive, press the SPACEBAR.  
The words “All Files” appear next to the drive letter.  
If you want to restore selected files on the drive, press ENTER.  
The Select Restore Files screen appears.  
Select the directory that contains the files you want to restore.  
Backup displays a list of the files that are in the directory you selected.  
Select a file you want to restore, and then press the SPACEBAR. Repeat this until you have selected all the files in the directory that you want to restore.
6. To specify the destination for the files you want to restore, open the Restore To list box.  
If you use Backup for MS-DOS, the Restore To dialog box appears. Select the destination for the files you want to restore, and then choose the OK button.  
If you use Backup for Windows, a list of locations appears. Select the destination for the files you want to restore, and then press TAB.
7. If you want to change Restore options, choose the Options button. Select or clear the options you want to change, and then choose the OK button.
8. To start restoring your files, choose the Start Restore button.  
Backup displays status information while it restores the files.

For instructions on using Restore, choose the Restore button from the main screen or window, and then press F1.

## If the “DMA buffer size too small” Message Appears

If you have installed Windows or the EMM386 device driver on your computer, Backup for MS-DOS may display the following message when you run the compatibility test or start a backup:

```
DMA buffer size too small. You cannot back up,
compare, or restore files until you increase
the DMA buffer size.
```

If you receive this message while you are running Backup for MS-DOS from within Windows, carry out the following procedure:

### ► To increase the size of the DMA buffer if you use Windows

1. Open your SYSTEM.INI file, which is located in your Windows directory, by using any text editor.
2. Find the [386Enh] section of the file, and then add the following line:  
**dmabuffersize=32**

3. Save the changes to your SYSTEM.INI file, and then quit the text editor.
4. If you are running Windows, quit Windows.
5. Restart Windows.

## Protecting Your Computer from Viruses

Anti-Virus can protect your data by detecting more than 800 different viruses and removing them from your computer. MS-DOS includes two versions of Anti-Virus: Anti-Virus for MS-DOS and Anti-Virus for Windows.

MS-DOS also includes VSafe, a memory-resident program that monitors your computer and warns of changes that might have been caused by a virus. For more information about VSafe, see “Using VSafe” later in this chapter.

If a virus infects your computer, you might need a startup disk to restart your computer. It's important to make the disk before your computer is infected by a virus. To create a startup disk, carry out the following procedure.

### ► To create a startup disk

1. Insert an unformatted floppy disk in drive A, and then type the following at the command prompt:  
**format a: /s**
2. Copy the Anti-Virus files to your startup disk by typing the following at the command prompt:

**copy msav\*.\* a:**

The Anti-Virus files are located in the same directory as your MS-DOS files.

## What Are Computer Viruses?

Computer viruses are programs designed to replicate and spread, sometimes without indicating that they exist. Computer viruses can produce a variety of symptoms on your computer. Some viruses multiply without causing obvious changes. More malicious strains can issue random sounds or greet you with unexpected screen messages. In extreme cases, viruses can damage files and hard disks.

Computer viruses can be classified by how they infect systems.

Type	Characteristics
Boot sector virus	The <i>boot sector</i> is the portion of a hard disk that controls how your operating system starts when you turn on your computer. A boot sector virus replaces the disk's original boot sector with its own, and loads the virus into memory. Once in memory, the virus can spread to other disks.
File infector	A file infector virus adds virus code to files that run programs, so the virus is activated whenever you run the program. When the virus is activated, it spreads to other program files.
Trojan horse	A Trojan horse virus is disguised as a legitimate program. When you run a program infected with a Trojan horse virus, your computer may be damaged. Trojan horse viruses are much more likely to destroy files or damage disks than other viruses. Files or disks infected with a Trojan horse virus may not be recoverable.

For information about specific viruses and how they work, see “Getting Information About Viruses” later in this chapter.

## Anti-Virus Help

Anti-Virus includes comprehensive help on dialog boxes, options, and tasks.

### ► To get help

- When an Anti-Virus screen, window, or dialog box appears, press F1.

## Scanning for Viruses

Anti-Virus protects your computer from viruses by scanning your computer's memory and disk drives. Anti-Virus offers the following methods of detecting computer viruses:

- Detect—Scans for viruses and displays information about each virus it finds. This method does not automatically remove viruses from your computer.
- Detect and Clean—Scans for viruses and removes any that it finds.

If you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, carry out the following procedure. If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, skip to the next procedure.

When you start Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, it reads file information on the drive you used to start the program. If you want to search for viruses on a different drive, you must select the drive before scanning for viruses.

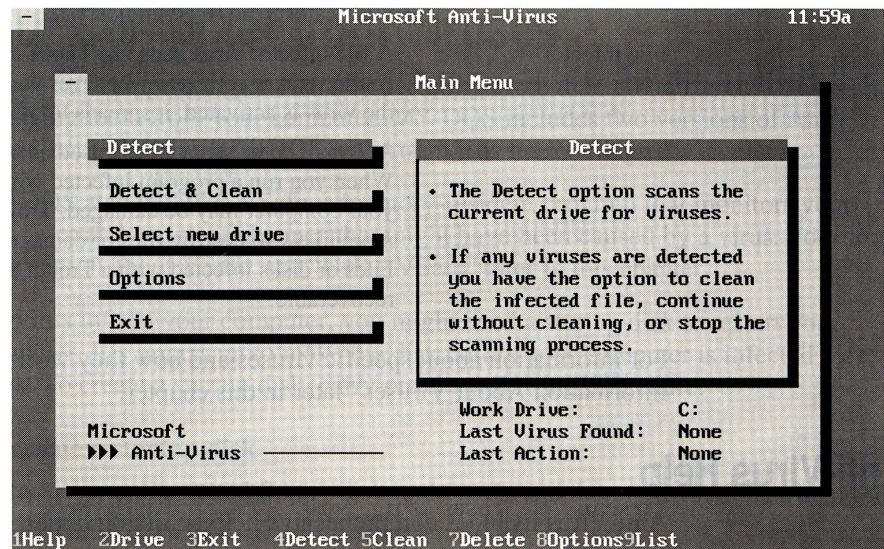


► **To scan for viruses using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**msav**

The Main Menu appears:



2. To scan the drive from which you started Anti-Virus, skip to step 5. To scan a different drive, proceed to step 3.

3. Choose the Select New Drive button.

Drive letters appear in the upper-left area of your screen.

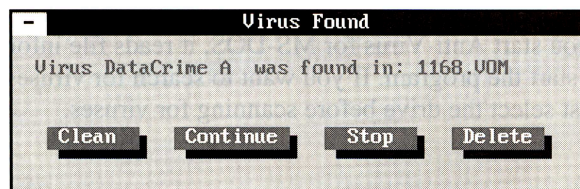
4. Select the drive you want to scan.

Anti-Virus reads file information on the drive you selected.

5. To detect viruses and remove them from your computer, choose the Detect & Clean button.

To detect viruses and have Anti-Virus prompt you if it finds one, choose the Detect button.

If you choose the Detect button and Anti-Virus finds a virus, a screen similar to the following appears:





Choose the action you want to take.

6. A status screen similar to the following appears after Anti-Virus has finished scanning your computer's memory and the drive you selected. Choose the OK button.

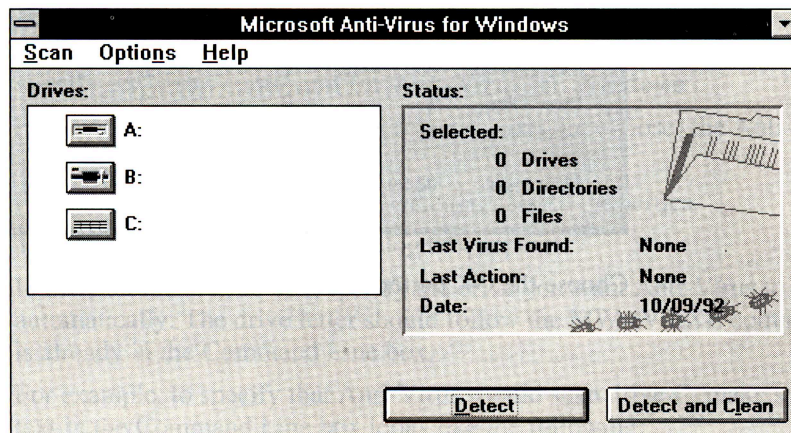
Viruses Detected and Cleaned			
	Checked	Infected	Cleaned
Hard disks :	1	0	0
Floppy disks :	0	0	0
Total disks :	1	0	0
COM Files :	117	0	0
EXE Files :	461	0	0
Other Files :	2830	0	0
Total Files :	3408	0	0
Scan Time :	00:02:48		

OK

Using Anti-Virus for Windows, you can scan one or more drives at a time. To scan for viruses, carry out the following procedure.

► **To scan for viruses using Anti-Virus for Windows**

1. From the Microsoft Tools group, choose the Anti-Virus icon.  
Or, from the Tools menu in File Manager, choose Anti-Virus.  
A screen similar to the following appears:

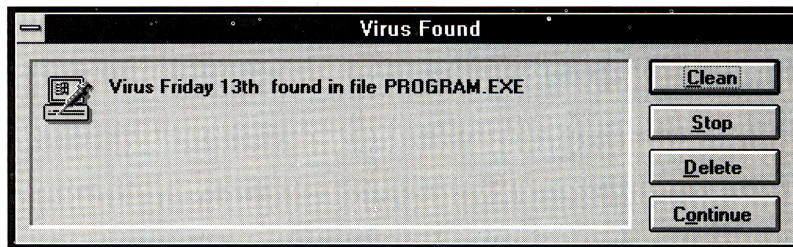


2. In the Drives box, choose the drive you want to scan by clicking it with your mouse or by selecting it with the arrow keys and then pressing the SPACEBAR.  
Anti-Virus reads file information on the drive you chose.
3. Repeat step 2 for each drive you want to scan.

4. To detect viruses and remove them from your computer, choose the Detect And Clean button.

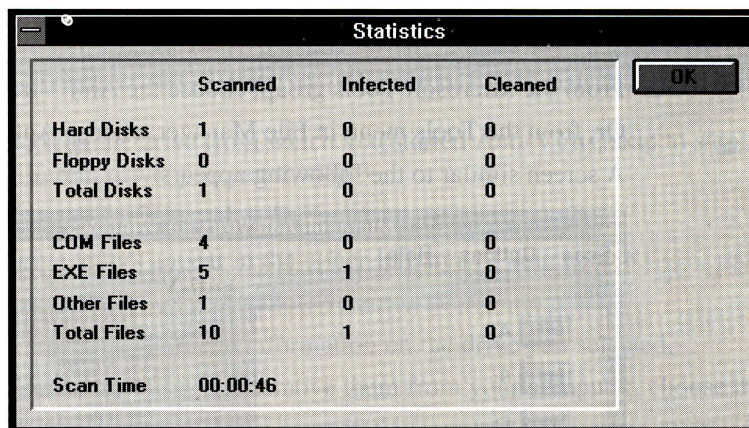
To detect viruses and have Anti-Virus prompt you if it finds one, choose the Detect button.

If you choose the Detect button and Anti-Virus detects a virus, a dialog box similar to the following appears:



Choose the action you want to take.

5. When Anti-Virus completes scanning your computer's memory and the drives you selected, a status screen similar to the following appears:



Choose the OK button.



## Automatically Scanning for Viruses

You can configure Anti-Virus to check for viruses automatically. If you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, you can automatically scan your memory and disk drives for viruses each time you turn on your computer. If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, you can automatically scan a drive you specify each time you start Anti-Virus.

If you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, carry out the following procedure. If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, skip to the next procedure.

### ► To scan automatically using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS

- To specify that Anti-Virus should scan your computer's memory and drives each time you start your computer, add the following command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
msav /p
```

If you use network drives, use the following command to limit scanning to local drives:

```
msav /p /l
```

If your AUTOEXEC.BAT file includes this command, Anti-Virus searches your computer's memory and local drives for viruses each time you start your computer.

If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, you can specify which drive should be scanned automatically whenever you choose the Anti-Virus icon in the Microsoft Tools group.

### ► To specify a startup command for Anti-Virus for Windows

1. From the Microsoft Tools group, select (but do not choose) the Anti-Virus icon.
2. From the File menu in Program Manager, choose Properties.  
The Program Item Properties dialog box appears.
3. In the Command Line box, specify the drive you want Anti-Virus to scan automatically. The drive letter should follow the MWAV.EXE command that is already in the Command Line box.

For example, to specify that Anti-Virus should scan drive C, make sure the text in the Command Line box looks like the following:

```
mwav.exe c:
```

4. Choose the OK button.

## Setting Anti-Virus Options

You can choose which drives Anti-Virus scans, set options to control how the program checks for viruses, and obtain information about viruses known to infect computers.

### ► To set Anti-Virus options

1. If you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, choose the Options button from the Main Menu.

If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, choose the Set Options command from the Options menu.

An Options dialog box appears.

2. Move to the check box you want to select or clear by pressing TAB.
3. To select or clear the box, press the SPACEBAR.
4. When you have finished setting options, choose the OK button.

For more information about Anti-Virus options, carry out one of the following procedures:

- If you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, press F1 when the Options dialog box is on your screen.
- If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, choose Index from the Help menu. The Anti-Virus Help screen appears. Choose Commands. The Commands screen appears. Under the Option Menu section, choose Set Options.

## Getting Information About Viruses

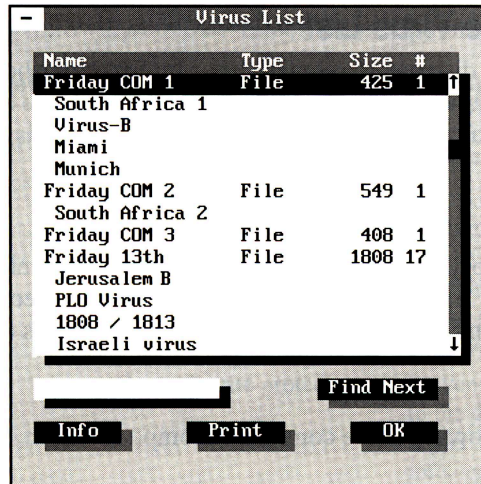
Anti-Virus includes a list of all the viruses it can recognize. Each virus is listed by its most common name, with known aliases indented under the name. The virus list also specifies the type of virus, the size of the virus code, and the number of known strains, or variants, of the virus.

### ► To get information about a virus

1. If you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, press F9.

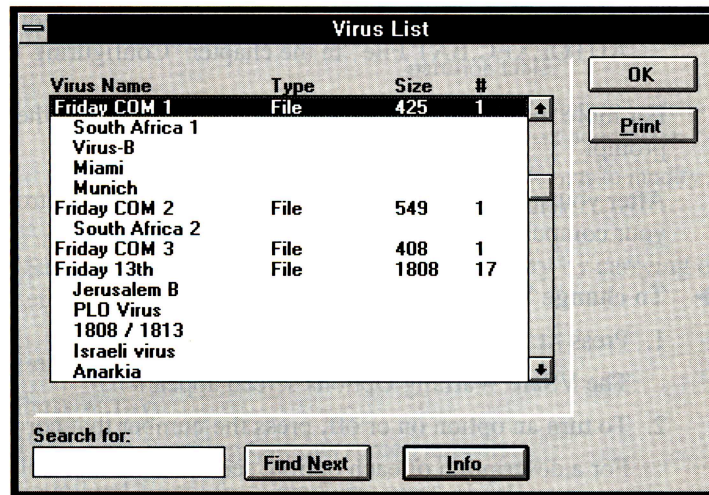
The Virus List appears:





If you are using Anti-Virus for Windows, choose Virus List from the Scan menu.

The Virus List appears:



2. Select the virus you want information about.

Or type the name, type, or size of the virus you want information about in the text box below the list.

3. Choose the Info button.

Information about the virus you selected appears.

## Updating the Virus List

New viruses are discovered regularly. For information about protecting your computer against new viruses as they are discovered, see Appendix D, “Obtaining New Virus Signatures” and the coupon at the back of this guide.

## Using VSafe

VSafe is a memory-resident program that constantly monitors your computer for activity that may indicate a virus infection. If VSafe detects suspicious activity, it displays a warning message. VSafe requires 44 kilobytes (K) of memory.

### ► To start VSafe

- Type the following at the command prompt:

**vsafe**

This command loads VSafe into memory using default settings. For a list of VSafe settings, see the table later in this section.

You can load VSafe into memory every time you start your computer by adding the **vsafe** command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For information about changing your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, see “Editing Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File” in the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

For more information about VSafe, type **help vsafe** at the MS-DOS command prompt.

After you start VSafe, you can change options that control how VSafe monitors your computer.

### ► To change VSafe options

1. Press ALT+V.

The VSafe Warning Options screen appears.

2. To turn an option on or off, press the number that corresponds to the option.

For a description of each option, see the table that follows this procedure.

3. When you have finished specifying the options you want, press ESC.

VSafe saves the options you specified.

The following table describes VSafe options and their default values.

Number	Name	Description	Default
1	HD low-level format	Warns of formatting that could completely erase your hard disk.	On
2	Resident	Warns of any attempt by a program to use standard MS-DOS methods of staying resident in memory. Warnings do not necessarily indicate the presence of a virus.	Off
3	General write protect	Prevents programs from writing to the disk. This option is useful if you suspect that a virus has infected a program.	Off
4	Check executable files	Checks programs opened by MS-DOS.	On
5	Boot sector viruses	Checks disks for boot sector viruses.	On
6	Protect HD boot sector	Warns of attempts to write to the hard disk boot sector and partition table.	On
7	Protect FD boot sector	Warns of attempts to write to the floppy disk boot sector.	Off
8	Protect executable files	Warns of attempts to modify executable files.	Off

If VSafe is loaded, you can unload it from memory by carrying out the following procedure.

► **To unload VSafe from memory**

1. Press ALT+V.  
The VSafe Warning Options screen appears.
2. To unload VSafe from memory, press ALT+U.  
MS-DOS unloads VSafe from memory.

If you use Windows, you must load the VSafe Manager program to ensure that Windows displays VSafe messages. Carry out the following procedure to make sure that VSafe is loaded into memory each time you start your computer and that the VSafe Manager is loaded into memory each time you start Windows.

► **To set up VSafe and VSafe Manager for Windows**

1. From the File menu in Program Manager, choose Run.

2. In the Command Line box, type the following:

**sysedit**

3. Choose the OK button.

The System Configuration Editor appears, with the following files open:

AUTOEXEC.BAT

CONFIG.SYS

WIN.INI

SYSTEM.INI

4. Add the following command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

**vsafe**

5. Add the following command to the **load=** line in the [Windows] section of your WIN.INI file:

**mwavtsr.exe**

6. From the File menu, choose Exit.

The System Configuration Editor prompts you to save your changes.

7. Choose the Yes button.

8. Quit Windows, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

When you add the **vsafe** command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, you can include one or more switches that control how VSafe monitors your computer. For more information, type **help vsafe** at the MS-DOS command prompt.

If you use Windows 3.1, you can add VSafe Manager to the StartUp group instead of adding the **mwavtsr.exe** command to the **load=** line in your WIN.INI file. To do this, carry out the following procedure.

► **To add VSafe Manager to your Startup group if you use Windows 3.1**

1. Open the Startup group.
2. From the File menu in Program Manager, choose New.
3. The New Program Object dialog box appears. Choose the OK button.  
The Program Item Properties dialog box appears.
4. In the Description box, type **VSafe Manager**.
5. In the Command Line box, type **mwavtsr.exe**, and then choose the OK button.
6. Quit Windows, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

---

**Caution** Do not run the MS-DOS or Windows Setup program again unless you unload VSafe from memory.

---



## Troubleshooting Anti-Virus

This section explains messages that Anti-Virus displays and provides instructions for correcting problems.

### Messages

Anti-Virus displays messages that offer choices for correcting specific conditions. For help, press F1.

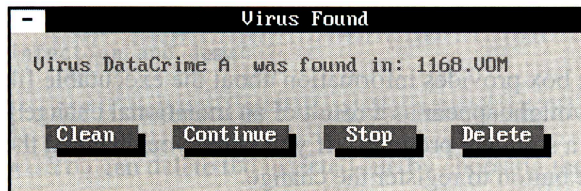
After you upgrade software, Anti-Virus might display messages warning about a possible virus infection. To reduce unwanted messages after upgrades, carry out the following procedure.

► **To reduce Anti-Virus messages after you upgrade software**

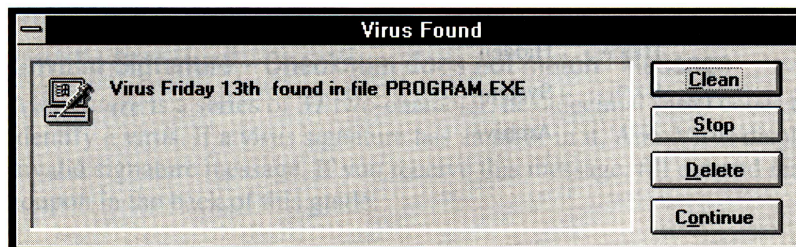
1. Use Anti-Virus to scan the manufacturer's disks before you install the software.
2. Write-protect the installation disks.
3. Install the software.
4. Scan the drive on which you installed the software. Doing so automatically updates Anti-Virus files.

### “Virus Found” Message

If Anti-Virus for MS-DOS finds a virus, it displays a Virus Found dialog box such as the following:



If Anti-Virus for Windows finds a virus, it displays a Virus Found dialog box such as the following:

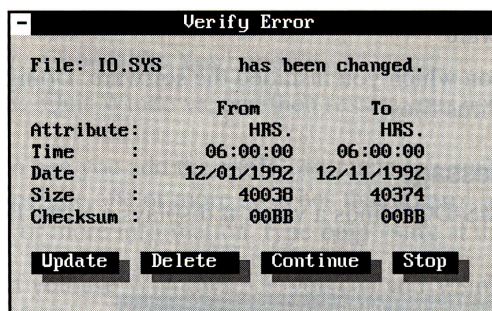


When a Virus Found dialog box appears, you have the following options:

- You can remove the virus from the file and restore the file to its original condition by choosing the Clean button. This minimizes the possibility of the virus infecting other files on your computer.
- You can ignore the virus and continue scanning the remaining files by choosing the Continue button.
- You can stop the scan and return to the Anti-Virus program by choosing the Stop button.
- You can erase the infected file from your computer by choosing the Delete button.

### “Verify Error” Message

If you selected the Verify Integrity and Prompt While Detect options, Anti-Virus alerts you when an executable file changes by displaying a dialog box similar to the following:



The dialog box provides information about the executable file that changed. The dialog box might appear as a result of an intentional change you made (such as upgrading a software program). If you know you changed the file, you can choose the Update button to register the change.

Microsoft Anti-Virus displays information about the following:

- *Attribute* indicates the file's attribute. Available attributes are:

R	Read-Only
H	Hidden
S	System
A	Archive

- *Time*, *Date*, and *Size* indicate the time and date the file was last modified and the size of the file in bytes. Most likely, this information indicates changes that you made intentionally. Although some viruses modify this information when they infect a file, you will be notified of any behind-the-scenes activity if VSafe is installed.
- *Checksum* provides information retrieved from the CHKLIST.MS file, which stores the checksum, MS-DOS attributes, size, date, and time of executable and system files. If this information no longer matches, the file may have been altered by a virus.

Anti-Virus offers you the following options:

- If you know the change is legitimate, choose the Update button to avoid receiving this message during subsequent scans.
- If the file size or checksum changed, choose the Delete button to delete the infected file.
- If you know about the change but don't want to update Anti-Virus, choose the Continue button.
- If you want to cancel the scan and return to the Anti-Virus screen, choose the Stop button.

### **“File was destroyed by the virus” Message**

If a virus damaged a file, Anti-Virus displays the following dialog box:

```
File was destroyed by the virus!!!  
Recovery for this file is impossible.  
Delete this file in order to prevent further  
infection and damage?
```

If a file is destroyed by a virus, you have the following options:

- You can delete the infected file by choosing the Delete button.
- You can ignore the infected file and continue scanning for viruses by choosing the Continue button.
- You can stop the scanning process and return to the Anti-Virus screen by choosing the Stop button.

### **“Invalid Signature – Checksum does not match” Message**

A *signature* is a series of 37 two-character, hexadecimal (hex) codes that uniquely identify a virus. If a virus signature has an error in it, Anti-Virus displays an invalid signature message. If you receive this message, fill out and mail the coupon in the back of this guide.

**“Program is trying to modify system memory” Message**

If VSafe detects a program that is trying to modify your computer's memory without using standard MS-DOS calls for memory-resident programs, Anti-Virus displays this warning.

Modifying system memory in this way generally indicates that a virus is attempting to infect your computer. However, some network drivers may cause VSafe to display this message when they load.

**▶ If a program is modifying system memory**

1. If you know that a network driver is being loaded after VSafe was loaded, choose the Continue button.
2. If you do not know what may be causing the memory modification, choose the Stop button.
3. Run Anti-Virus to check for viruses.

**“Program is trying to stay resident in memory” Message**

If you have selected the Resident option in VSafe and VSafe detects another program trying to load into memory, VSafe displays this warning.

**▶ If a program tries to stay resident in memory**

1. If you are aware that a memory-resident program is being loaded into memory after VSafe was loaded, choose the Continue button.  
If you do not think a memory-resident program should be loading into memory, choose the Stop button.
2. Run Anti-Virus to check for viruses.

**“Program is trying to write to disk” Message**

If you select the General Write Protect option in VSafe and a program tries to write to a disk, VSafe displays this warning.

**▶ If a program tries to write to a disk**

1. If you expected the program to write to a disk, choose the Continue button.  
If you do not think a program should be writing to a disk, choose the Stop button.
2. Run Anti-Virus to ensure that the program trying to write to the disk is not infected.



### **“Resident programs were loaded after VSafe” Message**

If one or more memory-resident programs were loaded after VSafe and you try to remove VSafe from memory, this message appears.

► **To remove other memory-resident programs from memory**

1. Choose the Stop button to leave VSafe resident in memory.
2. If possible, remove other memory-resident programs from memory in reverse order of their installation.
3. Remove VSafe from memory.
4. If you can't remove a program from memory, disable the command in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file that loads the program. Then, restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

For information about how to disable commands, type **help rem** at the command prompt.

### **“Since a virus was detected...” Message**

When you quit Anti-Virus after it has detected a virus, the following message appears:

Since a virus was detected, rebooting is recommended  
to minimize the possibility of further infection.

► **To quit Anti-Virus after a virus is detected**

- When Anti-Virus displays this warning message, choose the Reboot button to restart your system.

### **“The xxxxxx virus is known to infect DATA files...” Message**

If you have not selected the Check All Files option and Anti-Virus detects a virus, the the following message appears:

The xxxxxx virus is known to infect DATA files as well as  
executable files. As a result you should check all of the  
files on this disk. For your convenience, the Check All  
Files option will be automatically turned on when you leave  
this message. When this option is on, Microsoft Anti-Virus will  
scan every file on the disk, including data files.

## Miscellaneous Problems

The following section provides instructions for resolving other problems that might occur when you are using Anti-Virus.

### A program doesn't run correctly after a virus has been removed

If a program doesn't run correctly after you remove a virus from it, carry out the following procedure.

► **To restore a file that doesn't run after a virus is removed**

1. Delete the program file from your computer.
2. Restore a non-infected backup copy of the program file to your computer.  
Or install a new file that you've obtained from your software vendor.

### Windows does not start

Windows may not start if system files are infected.

To detect and remove viruses from Windows system files, run Anti-Virus for MS-DOS.

To set up Anti-Virus for MS-DOS, see "Installing Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete After Setup" in the chapter "Getting Started."

### Pressing ALT+V does not display the VSafe Warning Options screen

The ALT+V key combination works only if you are using Anti-Virus for MS-DOS and VSafe has been loaded into memory. If these conditions are met and you still cannot use the ALT+V key combination, another memory-resident program is probably using it.

You can change the key combination that VSafe uses by specifying the **/a** switch and the letter you want to use with the ALT key after the **vsafe** command. For example, to change the key combination to ALT+Q, type the following at the command prompt or add it to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

**vsafe /aq**

This command will cause the VSafe Warning Options screen to appear when you press ALT+Q.

For more information about adding commands to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, see "Editing Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File" in the chapter "Configuring Your System."

For more information, type **help vsafe** at the command prompt.

### Your computer stops responding when you are using Anti-Virus

If the directory structure on your hard disk is damaged, your computer may stop responding when you use Anti-Virus.

► **To repair the directory structure of your hard disk**

1. Quit Anti-Virus.

If you cannot quit, restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. (If you are running Windows, quit Windows.)

2. To repair the directory structure, type the following at the command prompt:

**chkdsk /f**

3. Run Anti-Virus again.

## Using SMARTDrive

SMARTDrive is a program that decreases the time your computer spends reading data from your hard disk. Use SMARTDrive if your computer has a hard disk and extended memory.

SMARTDrive reserves an area in extended memory in which it stores information that it reads from your hard disk. An application can access this information in memory faster than it can access the same information on a hard disk. When system resources are in demand, SMARTDrive can also temporarily store information to be written to your hard disk and write it to the disk when resources become available.

If your computer can use SMARTDrive, MS-DOS Setup adds the **smartdrv** command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file when you install MS-DOS. After you run Setup, SMARTDrive starts automatically when you start your computer.

For more information about SMARTDrive, type **help smartdrv** at the MS-DOS command prompt.

## Using the Defragmenter

Over time, as programs read from and write to your hard disk, information that is stored on the disk can become *fragmented*. Fragmentation occurs when a file is broken into fragments that are stored in different locations on the disk. Fragmentation doesn't affect the validity of the information—your files are still complete when they are opened. But it takes much longer for your computer to read and write fragmented files than it does to read and write unfragmented files.

► **To defragment the files on your hard disk**

1. Delete any unnecessary files from your hard disk. For more information, see the chapter “Freeing Disk Space.”
2. Quit all programs that are running, including Windows.  
You cannot run the Defragmenter from an MS-DOS prompt within Windows.
3. Check for lost allocation units on your hard disk by typing the following at the command prompt:

**chkdsk /f**

If MS-DOS detects lost allocation units, a prompt similar to the following appears:

```
10 lost allocation units found in 3 chains.  
Convert lost chains to files?
```

Press Y to save the information in the lost allocation units.

For information about the **chkdsk** command, type **help chkdsk** at the command prompt.

4. Start the Defragmenter by typing the following at the command prompt:

**defrag**

The Defragmenter displays a list of the disk drives on your computer.

5. To select the drive you want to defragment, use the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key and then press ENTER.

The Defragmenter analyzes the data on that drive and recommends a defragmentation option.

6. To begin defragmentation, press ENTER.

If you want to change defragmentation settings or want more information about the current defragmentation settings before you begin, press TAB to select the Configure button, and then press ENTER. The Optimize menu appears.

For more information about the Defragmenter, type **help defrag** at the command prompt.



## Recovering Deleted Files

Undelete includes two undelete programs: Undelete for MS-DOS, a program you can run from the command prompt, and Undelete for Windows, a program you can run from Windows.

Undelete enables you to choose one of three levels of protection: Delete Sentry, Delete Tracker, and standard. For more information about specifying a level of protection, see the following section.

For instructions on recovering a file that was accidentally deleted, see “Undelete for Windows” or “Undelete for MS-DOS” later in this chapter.

## Configuring Delete Protection

Undelete offers three levels of protection: Delete Sentry, Delete Tracker, and standard. Of these, Delete Sentry provides the highest level of protection. It requires a small amount of memory and disk space. Delete Tracker, the next level of protection, requires the same amount of memory, but minimal disk space. The lowest level of protection, standard, requires neither memory nor disk space, but still makes it possible to recover many deleted files. For more information about each level of protection, type **help undelete** at the command prompt.

By default, MS-DOS configures your computer for the standard level of delete protection. Using this level of protection, you can recover a deleted file unless MS-DOS has placed another file in the deleted file’s location.

If you use Undelete for MS-DOS and want a higher level of delete protection, carry out the following procedure. If you use Undelete for Windows and want a higher level of delete protection, skip to the following procedure.

### ► To choose a level of delete protection using Undelete for MS-DOS

- To choose the Delete Sentry level of protection on your current drive, type the following at the command prompt:

**undelete /s**

To choose the Delete Tracker level of protection, include the **/t** switch and the drive you want to protect with the **undelete** command. For example, to enable Delete Tracker on drive C, include the following command in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file or type it at the command prompt:

**undelete /tc**

For information about how to include a command in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, see the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

For more information about configuring Undelete for MS-DOS, type **help undelete** at the command prompt.

If you use Undelete for Windows and want a higher level of protection, carry out the following procedure.

► **To choose a level of delete protection using Undelete for Windows**

1. Start Undelete by choosing the Undelete icon from the Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager.

Or choose the Undelete command from the File menu in File Manager.

2. From the Options menu in Undelete, choose Configure Delete Protection.

The Configure Delete Protection dialog box appears.

3. Select a delete-protection method, and then choose the OK button.

For more information about delete-protection methods, press F1.

4. If you choose Delete Sentry, a dialog box appears. Choose the Drives button. Select the drive(s) you want to protect, and then choose the OK button. For information about changing options in the Configure Delete Sentry dialog box, press F1. When you finish changing options, choose the OK button.

If you choose Delete Tracker, select the drives you want to protect, and then choose the OK button. For help with the Configure Delete Tracker dialog box, press F1.

The Update AUTOEXEC.BAT dialog box appears.

5. To implement the delete-protection method you selected, choose OK.

Before the method you selected can take effect, you must quit Windows and restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

## Undelete for Windows

This section explains how to use Undelete for Windows to recover files you have accidentally deleted.

If you cannot find information about an Undelete feature in this section, press F1 when an Undelete window or dialog box appears on your screen.

## Recovering a File

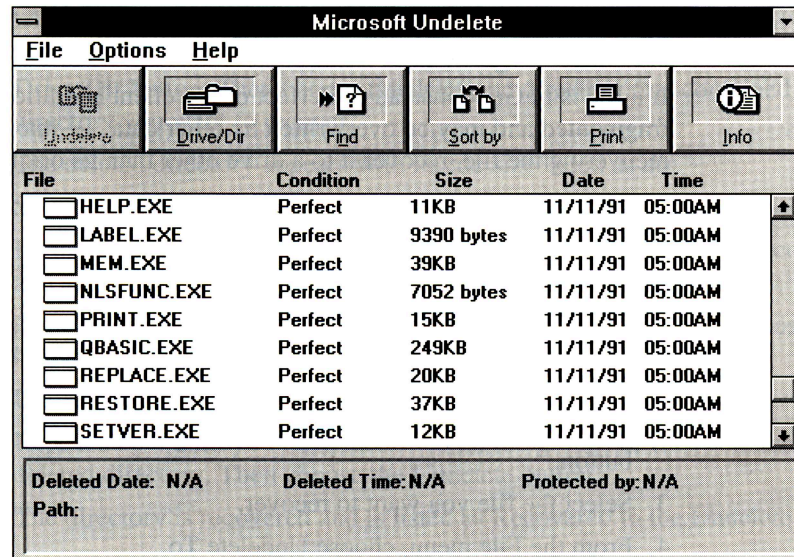
The successful recovery of deleted files depends on their condition. Files can be in Perfect, Excellent, Good, Poor, or Destroyed condition. For more information about each condition, see the following table.

This condition	Indicates that the file
Perfect	Was protected by the Delete Sentry method of delete protection and can be recovered without difficulty.
Excellent	Was protected by the Delete Tracker method of delete protection. This file may be partially overwritten by other data.
Good	Is fragmented on the disk. Some of the data in this file may be lost.
Poor	Cannot be recovered by using Undelete for Windows. You might be able to recover some data by using Undelete for MS-DOS.
Destroyed	Cannot be recovered.

### ► To recover a file

1. Start Undelete by choosing the Undelete icon from the Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager.

Or choose the Undelete command from the File menu in File Manager. A screen such as the following appears:





2. If the file you want to recover does not appear in the list, choose the Drive/Dir button. Then choose the drive and directory that contained the deleted file.

The Undelete screen displays files that were deleted from the directory you chose. If the condition of the file you want to recover is Excellent or Perfect, you can easily recover it.

If the file is in Good condition, see the following section, “Recovering a File in Good Condition,” before carrying out the rest of this procedure.

If the file is in Poor condition, you cannot recover it by using Undelete for Windows. However, you might be able to recover some of the data in the file by using Undelete for MS-DOS.

If the file is in Destroyed condition, you cannot recover it.

For more information about the condition of deleted files, choose the File Info command from the File menu, and then press F1.

3. Select the file you want to recover.

4. Choose the Undelete button.

If the first letter of the deleted file is a question mark (?), Undelete displays a dialog box prompting you to substitute the correct letter for the question mark. If this dialog box appears, type the missing letter, and then choose the OK button.

The file is listed as Recovered in the Undelete screen.

## Recovering a File in Good Condition

If a file is in Good instead of Perfect or Excellent condition, the file's data is fragmented and may be overwritten by other data. To maximize your chances of recovering the file, recover it to a drive other than its original drive.

### ► To recover a file in Good condition

1. From the Microsoft Tools group, choose the Undelete icon.

The main Undelete screen appears.

2. To select the directory from which you want to recover a deleted file, choose the Drive/Dir button.

Select the directory you want by using the arrow keys, and then choose the OK button.

3. Select the file you want to recover.

4. From the File menu, choose Undelete To.

The Undelete To dialog box appears.

5. Select the drive and directory to which you want to recover the file, and then choose the OK button.



## Recovering a File on a Network Drive

You can recover files on a network drive that is protected by Delete Sentry. For more information, see “Configuring Delete Protection” earlier in this chapter.

To recover a file on a network drive, carry out the procedure in “Recovering a File” earlier in this section.

## Recovering a Directory and Its Files

If you accidentally delete a directory and its contents, you might be able to recover it by using Undelete for Windows. You must recover a directory before you can recover any of the files in it.

---

**Caution** Undelete for Windows uses the standard level of delete protection for directories. You must specify the first letter of the name of the directory you want to recover. If a program is using the disk space formerly used by the directory, you may not be able to recover the directory and its contents.

---

### ► To recover a directory

1. Start Undelete by choosing the Undelete icon from the Microsoft Tools group in Program Manager.

Or choose the Undelete command from the File menu in File Manager.

2. If Undelete does not list the directory you want to recover, choose the Drive/Dir button. Then choose the drive and directory that contained the directory you want to recover.

The deleted directory appears with its file size listed as *dir*.

3. Select the directory you want to recover, and then choose the Undelete button.

If Undelete can find all the parts of the directory, the directory is recovered and appears as Recovered in the Undelete window.

4. If the directory contains the group of files you want to recover, choose the Add button. If not, choose the Skip button.

Undelete displays another group of files.

5. Repeat step 4 until you have identified all the groups of files contained in the deleted directory. Then choose the Undelete button.

The directory is recovered and is listed as Recovered in the Undelete screen.

## Finding Deleted Files

If you cannot find deleted files by using the Change Drive And Directory dialog box, you can search for them by choosing the Find button. For help with the Find Deleted Files dialog box, press F1.

## Purging Files Protected by Delete Sentry

When you select the Delete Sentry method of delete protection, you can specify how many days to save deleted files and a maximum percentage of disk space to allow for Delete Sentry's hidden directory. Delete Sentry files are purged automatically when these limits are reached or when the disk space they occupy is needed by MS-DOS.

When Delete Sentry purges files, it removes the oldest deleted files first. You can also purge deleted files yourself by using Undelete. Purging deleted files creates more room for protecting files, especially when disk space is at a premium.

### ► To purge files protected by Delete Sentry

1. From the Microsoft Tools group, choose the Undelete icon.

The main Undelete screen appears.

2. To select the directory from which you want to purge files, choose the Drive/Dir button.

Select the directory you want by using the arrow keys, and then choose the OK button.

3. In the Undelete screen, select the files you want to purge.

Files protected by Delete Sentry are in Perfect condition.

4. From the File menu, choose Purge Delete Sentry File.

A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the deletion.

5. Choose the OK button.

The selected files disappear from the Undelete screen.

## Undelete for MS-DOS

Use Undelete for MS-DOS if you are not running Windows or haven't installed Undelete for Windows.

If you want to use Undelete for MS-DOS and didn't install it during Setup, see "Installing Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete After Setup" in the chapter "Getting Started."

## Recovering Files

You can recover deleted files by making the directory that contained the files current, and then using the **undelete** command.

► **To recover files**

1. Make the directory that contained the deleted files current. For example, if the deleted files were in the DOS directory, type the following at the command prompt:

**cd \dos**

2. To recover the files, type the following at the command prompt:

**undelete**

3. One by one, MS-DOS lists the deleted files it has found and prompts you to specify whether it should recover them. To recover a file, press Y. MS-DOS may also prompt you to type the initial letter of a filename.

## Using Advanced Undelete Methods

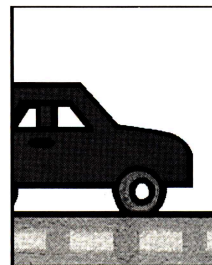
For information about using advanced methods of recovering files or about using **undelete** syntax, type the following at the command prompt:

**help undelete**





# Configuring Your System



When you configure your system, you set it up so that MS-DOS, your hardware, and your applications work the way you want them to. This can be as simple as customizing the appearance of your command prompt or as complex as setting up a new hardware component. Most of your system's configuration information is stored in two files:

- Your `CONFIG.SYS` file is a text file that contains commands that configure your computer's hardware components (memory, keyboard, mouse, printer, and so on) so MS-DOS and your applications can use them. When MS-DOS starts, it carries out the commands in your `CONFIG.SYS` file first.
- Your `AUTOEXEC.BAT` file is a batch program that MS-DOS runs immediately after carrying out the commands in your `CONFIG.SYS` file. Your `AUTOEXEC.BAT` file can contain any commands you want carried out when you start your system—for example, commands that define the port your printer is connected to, clear your screen of startup messages, or run your favorite menu program.

These files are typically located in the root directory of your startup disk (usually drive C).

Unless you specify otherwise, MS-DOS carries out the commands in both your `CONFIG.SYS` and `AUTOEXEC.BAT` files each time you start your computer. You can instruct MS-DOS to bypass the commands in these files if you need to. For more information, see “Bypassing `CONFIG.SYS` and `AUTOEXEC.BAT` Commands” later in this chapter.

When you install MS-DOS, MS-DOS Setup creates a basic system configuration that works for most computers. However, you might want to change this configuration to:

- Customize the way MS-DOS uses hardware, memory, and files. For more information about changing your MS-DOS configuration, see the following section.

- Add a new hardware component or reconfigure an existing component. For more information about adding or changing hardware devices, see “Configuring Hardware Devices” later in this chapter.
- Specify commands you want MS-DOS to carry out each time your computer starts. For more information, see “Specifying Startup Commands in Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File” later in this chapter.
- Define more than one system configuration. For example, if two different people use the same computer, each person can specify a separate configuration. This is an advanced use of CONFIG.SYS commands and is explained in “Using Multiple Configurations” later in this chapter.

The rest of this chapter explains how to configure your system by using commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.

## Using CONFIG.SYS Commands to Configure Your System

When your computer starts, MS-DOS carries out commands that configure your hardware and reserve space in memory for information processing. The file that contains these commands is named CONFIG.SYS. MS-DOS Setup creates a CONFIG.SYS file and stores it in the root directory of your startup disk. (If you already have a CONFIG.SYS file, Setup modifies your existing file as necessary.)

You can edit your CONFIG.SYS file to add and change commands that configure your system.

## Editing Your CONFIG.SYS File

To edit your CONFIG.SYS file, use a text editor that saves files as unformatted (ASCII) text (for example, MS-DOS Editor).

---

**Caution** Do not edit your CONFIG.SYS file by using a word processor that saves files only in a special document format. If you save your CONFIG.SYS file as a formatted file, your computer might not start correctly.

---

MS-DOS reads your CONFIG.SYS file only when you start your computer. Therefore, any time you change your CONFIG.SYS file, you must restart your computer for your changes to take effect.

► **To make changes to your CONFIG.SYS file**

1. Create a startup disk by inserting an unformatted floppy disk in drive A, and then typing the following at the command prompt:  
**format a: /s**
2. Copy your CONFIG.SYS file to the startup disk you just created by typing the following at the command prompt:  
**copy c:\config.sys a:**
3. Open the CONFIG.SYS file on your hard disk by using a text editor such as MS-DOS Editor. (To open the file by using MS-DOS Editor, type **edit c:\config.sys** at the command prompt.)
4. Add or change CONFIG.SYS commands as necessary. Each CONFIG.SYS command must begin on a separate line. For a list of the commands you can use in your CONFIG.SYS file, see the following section.
5. When you finish editing your CONFIG.SYS file, save your changes, and then quit the text editor.
6. Remove any disks from your floppy disk drives, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

---

**Note** The settings in your CONFIG.SYS file control basic components of your system, such as memory and other hardware devices. If you change your CONFIG.SYS file and the new settings are incorrect, your system might be unable to start correctly. If this happens, restart your computer by inserting the startup disk you created in drive A and pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. Or, follow the procedures in “Bypassing CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands” later in this chapter.

---

## CONFIG.SYS Commands

The commands in your CONFIG.SYS file load special programs or determine how your hardware should work. Most CONFIG.SYS commands can be used only in your CONFIG.SYS file; the only exceptions are the **break**, **rem**, and **set** commands, which you can also use in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file or type at the command prompt. A typical CONFIG.SYS file contains some, but not all, of these commands. The following table briefly describes the purpose of each CONFIG.SYS command.

Command	Purpose
<b>break</b>	Specifies whether MS-DOS should check periodically for the CTRL+C or CTRL+BREAK key combination. For more information, type <b>help break</b> at the command prompt.
<b>buffers</b>	Specifies how much memory MS-DOS reserves for transferring information to and from disks. For more information, type <b>help buffers</b> at the command prompt.
<b>country</b>	Sets the language conventions for your system. For more information, see the chapter “Customizing for International Use” or type <b>help country</b> at the command prompt.
<b>device</b>	Loads an installable device driver—a program that controls a hardware component, such as a mouse or memory board. For more information, see “Configuring Hardware Devices” later in this chapter or type <b>help device</b> at the command prompt.
<b>devicehigh</b>	Loads an installable device driver into the upper memory area. For more information, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available” or type <b>help devicehigh</b> at the command prompt.
<b>dos</b>	Specifies whether MS-DOS will use the high memory area (HMA) and whether it will provide access to upper memory blocks (UMBs). For more information, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available” or type <b>help dos</b> at the command prompt.
<b>drivparm</b>	Sets the characteristics of a disk drive. For more information, type <b>help drivparm</b> at the command prompt.
<b>files</b>	Specifies how many files can be open at a time. For more information, type <b>help files</b> at the command prompt.
<b>install</b>	Loads a memory-resident program (also called a terminate-and-stay-resident program, or TSR). For more information, type <b>help install</b> at the command prompt.
<b>lastdrive</b>	Sets the number of valid drive letters. For more information, type <b>help lastdrive</b> at the command prompt.
<b>numlock</b>	Specifies whether the NUM LOCK setting of the numeric keypad is initially on or off. For more information, type <b>help numlock</b> at the command prompt.
<b>rem</b>	Indicates that the text that follows is a descriptive remark, not a command. Can also be used to disable a command. For more information, type <b>help rem</b> at the command prompt.
<b>set</b>	Sets the value of environment variables such as PROMPT or TEMP. For more information, see “Using Multiple Configurations” later in this chapter or type <b>help set</b> at the command prompt.
<b>shell</b>	Configures COMMAND.COM or specifies that a command interpreter other than COMMAND.COM should be used. For more information, type <b>help shell</b> or <b>help command</b> at the command prompt.



---

Command	Purpose
<b>stacks</b>	Specifies how much memory to reserve for processing hardware interrupts. For more information, type <b>help stacks</b> at the command prompt.
<b>switches</b>	Specifies special options in MS-DOS. For more information, type <b>help switches</b> at the command prompt.

---

Your CONFIG.SYS file can also contain the **include**, **menucolor**, **menudefault**, **menuitem**, and **submenu** commands. For more information, see “Using Multiple Configurations” later in this chapter.

---

**Note** Most CONFIG.SYS commands can appear in your CONFIG.SYS file in any order. For example, the **dos**, **files**, or **buffers** commands can appear anywhere in the file. However, the relative order of the **device** and **devicehigh** commands is important. For more information, see “Determining the Order of CONFIG.SYS Commands” later in this chapter.

---

## Configuring Hardware Devices

Each of your computer’s hardware components is called a *device*. Your computer’s keyboard, mouse, monitor, printer, disk drives, and memory boards are all devices. Each device has characteristics that can be customized.

MS-DOS uses a program called a *device driver* to control each device. For example, MS-DOS uses a built-in device driver to control how information is read from and written to a floppy disk drive. MS-DOS has built-in device drivers for your keyboard, monitor, hard and floppy disk drives, and communication ports. Because these device drivers are built in, you do not have to do anything special to use them. However, you can customize certain features of these device drivers by using CONFIG.SYS commands. For a list of these commands, see “CONFIG.SYS Commands” earlier in this chapter.

Other devices, such as a memory board or a mouse, come with their own device drivers. Such a device driver is called an *installable* device driver because you install it by adding a command to your CONFIG.SYS file. MS-DOS includes several installable device drivers.

To use an installable device driver, add a **device** command for that driver to your CONFIG.SYS file. When MS-DOS starts, it loads the device driver into memory. For example, to load the MOUSE.SYS device driver located in the C:\MOUSE directory, you would add the following command to your CONFIG.SYS file:

**device=c:\mouse\mouse.sys**

When MS-DOS receives this command, it loads the MOUSE.SYS device driver into memory. The mouse device driver remains in memory and provides access to your mouse.

---

**Note** Many hardware devices come with installation programs that automatically add the necessary commands to your CONFIG.SYS file.

---

MS-DOS comes with the following installable device drivers.

Driver	Purpose
ANSI.SYS	Supports American National Standards Institute (ANSI) terminal emulation. For more information, type <b>help ansi.sys</b> at the command prompt.
DISPLAY.SYS	Supports code-page switching for monitors. For more information, type <b>help display.sys</b> at the command prompt.
DRIVER.SYS	Creates a logical drive that you can use to refer to a physical floppy disk drive. For more information, type <b>help driver.sys</b> at the command prompt.
EMM386.EXE	Simulates expanded memory and provides access to the upper memory area on a computer with an 80386 or higher processor with extended memory. (The first time you use the Microsoft MemMaker memory-optimization program, it installs this device driver automatically.) For more information, type <b>help emm386.exe</b> at the command prompt.
HIMEM.SYS	Manages the use of extended memory on a computer with an 80286 or higher processor and extended memory. (MS-DOS Setup installs this device driver automatically on such systems.) For more information, type <b>help himem.sys</b> at the command prompt.
RAMDRIVE.SYS	Simulates a hard disk drive by creating a virtual disk drive in your system's random-access memory (RAM). For more information, type <b>help ramdrive.sys</b> at the command prompt.

---

Driver	Purpose
SETVER.EXE	Loads the MS-DOS version table into memory. For more information, type <b>help setver.exe</b> at the command prompt.
SMARTDRV.EXE	Performs double buffering, which provides compatibility for hard-disk controllers that cannot work with memory provided by EMM386 or Windows running in 386 enhanced mode. For more information, type <b>help smartdrv.exe</b> at the command prompt.

---

## Determining the Order of CONFIG.SYS Commands

Most CONFIG.SYS commands can appear in your CONFIG.SYS file in any order. For example, the **dos**, **files**, or **buffers** commands can appear anywhere in the file.

The order of the **device** and **devicehigh** commands is important, however, because some device drivers enable devices that are needed by other drivers. For example, the HIMEM.SYS extended-memory driver must be loaded before any drivers that use extended memory.

The following list shows the order in which device drivers should appear in your CONFIG.SYS file:

1. HIMEM.SYS, if your computer has extended memory.
2. Your expanded-memory manager, if your computer has an expanded-memory board.
3. EMM386.EXE, if your computer has an 80386 processor and extended memory. (If your CONFIG.SYS file includes commands that load both an expanded-memory manager and EMM386, the EMM386.EXE command line should include the **noems** switch.)

The EMM386 memory manager can provide access to the upper memory area. EMM386 can also use extended memory to simulate expanded memory on computers that do not have expanded memory. For more information, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available.”

4. Any other device drivers.

---

**Note** This list shows only the recommended order for device drivers. It is not intended to be a list of the commands that your CONFIG.SYS file should contain. The contents of your CONFIG.SYS file depend on the type of computer, amount and type of memory, hardware configuration, and programs you have.

---

## Sample CONFIG.SYS Files

The following is a typical CONFIG.SYS file for an 80386 computer with 2 or more megabytes (MB) of extended memory:

```
device=c:\dos\setver.exe
device=c:\dos\himem.sys
device=c:\dos\emm386.exe ram
devicehigh=c:\mouse\mouse.sys
buffers=20
files=40
break=on
dos=high,umb
```

In this example:

- The **device** commands load the SETVER.EXE, HIMEM.SYS, and EMM386.EXE device drivers. The SETVER.EXE driver manages the MS-DOS version table. The HIMEM.SYS driver manages extended memory. The **ram** switch directs the EMM386.EXE driver to provide access to upper memory and simulate expanded memory.
- The **devicehigh** command loads the MOUSE.SYS device driver, which provides access to the mouse, into upper memory.
- The **buffers** command reserves 20 buffers for transferring information to and from disks.
- The **files** command gives MS-DOS access to 40 files at one time.
- The **break** command checks frequently for the CTRL+C or CTRL+BREAK key combination.
- The **dos=high, umb** command runs MS-DOS in the high memory area and gives programs access to the upper memory area. (For more information about the upper memory area, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available.”)

If you use a network and your computer has an 80286 processor and expanded memory, your CONFIG.SYS file might look similar to the following:

```
device=c:\emsdrv\emsdrv.sys
device=c:\mouse\mouse.sys
device=c:\net\network.sys
device=c:\dos\ramdrive.sys 256 /a
lastdrive=z
buffers=20
files=30
break=on
```



In this example:

- The first three **device** commands load device drivers for an expanded memory board, a mouse, and a network.
- The **device** command for RAMDRIVE.SYS starts RAMDrive and creates a 256-kilobyte (K) RAM drive; the **/a** switch instructs RAMDrive to create the RAM drive in expanded memory.
- The **lastdrive** command reserves space for 26 logical drives, so that letters from A through Z can be assigned as drive letters.

## Specifying Startup Commands in Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File

Each time you start your computer, MS-DOS first carries out the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file, then it carries out the commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. This file is located in the root directory of your startup disk (usually drive C). The commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file set the characteristics of your devices, customize the information that MS-DOS displays, and start memory-resident programs and other applications.

You can customize your system by adding commands to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. You can include any commands you would usually type at the command prompt.

## Editing Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File

To edit your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, use a text editor that saves files as unformatted (ASCII) text.

---

**Caution** Do not edit your AUTOEXEC.BAT file by using a word processor that saves files only in a special document format. If you save your AUTOEXEC.BAT file as a formatted file, your computer might not start correctly.

---

MS-DOS carries out the commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file when you start your computer. After changing your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, restart your computer so your changes can take effect.

### ► To make changes to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file

1. Create a startup disk by inserting an unformatted floppy disk in drive A and then typing the following at the command prompt:

**format a: /s**

2. Copy your AUTOEXEC.BAT file to the startup disk you just created by typing the following at the command prompt:  
**copy c:\autoexec.bat a:**
3. Open the AUTOEXEC.BAT file on your hard disk by using a text editor such as MS-DOS Editor. (To open the file by using MS-DOS Editor, type **edit c:\autoexec.bat** at the command prompt.)
4. Add or change AUTOEXEC.BAT commands as necessary. Each command must begin on a separate line. For more information, see the following section, “AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands.”
5. When you finish editing your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, save your changes, and then quit the text editor.
6. Remove any disks from your floppy disk drives, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

---

**Note** If you change your AUTOEXEC.BAT file and the new settings are incorrect, your system might not be able to start correctly. If this happens, restart your computer by inserting the startup disk you created in drive A and pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. Or, follow the procedures in “Bypassing CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands” later in this chapter.

---

## AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands

A *batch program* is a text file that contains a series of commands that MS-DOS carries out when you type its name at the command prompt. Your AUTOEXEC.BAT file is a special batch program that runs every time you start your computer.

Batch commands can be used in all batch programs, including your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. The following batch commands are commonly used in an AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

Command	Purpose
<b>prompt</b>	Sets the appearance of your command prompt. For more information, type <b>help prompt</b> at the command prompt.
<b>mode</b>	Sets the characteristics of your keyboard, monitor, and printer and communication ports. For more information, type <b>help mode</b> at the command prompt.
<b>path</b>	Specifies the directories that MS-DOS should search for executable files (files with a .COM, .EXE, or .BAT filename extension) and the order in which the directories should be searched. For more information, type <b>help path</b> at the command prompt.

Command	Purpose
<b>echo off</b>	Directs MS-DOS not to display the commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file as they run. (You can also prevent a command from appearing by inserting an at sign [ <b>@</b> ] before the command.) For more information, type <b>help echo</b> at the command prompt.
<b>set</b>	Creates an environment variable that programs can use. (You can also use the <b>set</b> command in your CONFIG.SYS file.) For more information, type <b>help set</b> at the command prompt.

For more information about creating batch files, type **help batch** at the command prompt.

Another common use of the AUTOEXEC.BAT file is to start *memory-resident programs*—programs that load into memory and generally stay there until you turn your computer off. These are also called terminate-and-stay-resident (TSR) programs. MS-DOS includes several memory-resident programs that are commonly started from the AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

Command	Purpose
<b>doskey</b>	Provides keyboard shortcuts you can use at the command prompt. For example, you can use <b>doskey</b> to recall and edit commands you entered previously. For more information, type <b>help doskey</b> at the command prompt.
<b>vsafe</b>	Monitors your system for the presence of viruses. For more information, type <b>help vsafe</b> at the command prompt.
<b>smartdrv</b>	Speeds up access to your hard disk. For more information, type <b>help smartdrv</b> at the command prompt.

After MS-DOS finishes running all the commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, it displays the command prompt. (If your AUTOEXEC.BAT file starts MS-DOS Shell, Microsoft Windows, or another program, you will see that program's interface instead.)

## Sample AUTOEXEC.BAT Files

The following sample AUTOEXEC.BAT file contains some of the most commonly used commands:

```
path c:\;c:\dos;c:\utility;c:\batch
prompt $t$_$p$g
set temp=c:\temp
doskey
smartdrv
```

In this example:

- The **path** command directs MS-DOS to search for program files in the current directory and then in the following directories: the root directory of drive C and the C:\DOS, C:\UTILITY, and C:\BATCH directories. A semicolon (;) separates the names of the directories.
- The **prompt** command sets the command prompt so that it shows the current time, drive, and directory, followed by a greater-than sign (>).
- The **set temp** command creates an environment variable named TEMP and sets it equal to the directory C:\TEMP. (The name you specify must be the name of an existing directory.) Many programs, including MS-DOS, use this variable when storing temporary files.
- The **doskey** command loads the Doskey program into memory.
- The **smartdrv** command loads the SMARTDrive program into memory.

Suppose your system has a hard disk drive and a printer connected to port COM1, and you want Microsoft Windows to start automatically each time you start your computer. In this case, your AUTOEXEC.BAT file might include the following commands:

```
@echo off
path c:\;c:\dos;c:\windows
mode lpt1=com1
set temp=c:\temp
smartdrv
doskey
win
```

In this example:

- The **echo off** command prevents AUTOEXEC.BAT commands from being displayed as MS-DOS carries them out. (The @ sign at the beginning of the line prevents the **echo off** command from being displayed.)
- The **mode** command redirects printer output from parallel port LPT1 (the default port) to serial port COM1.
- The **smartdrv** command loads the SMARTDrive program into memory.
- The **doskey** command loads the Doskey program, which provides keyboard shortcuts at the command prompt.
- The last command, **win**, starts Microsoft Windows.



## Bypassing CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands

If you need to, you can start your computer without running the commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. This is most useful when you are experiencing problems that might be related to the settings in those files. You can bypass startup commands in the following ways:

- You can bypass all the commands in both your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. For more information, see the following section.
- You can prevent MS-DOS from carrying out specific startup commands. For more information, see “Confirming Each Startup Command” later in this chapter.
- You can have MS-DOS prompt you to confirm a particular CONFIG.SYS command every time your computer starts. To do this, insert a question mark (?) after the command name but before the equal sign (=). For example, your CONFIG.SYS file might contain the **device=c:\dos\ramdrive.sys** command line. To have MS-DOS prompt you to confirm that command each time your computer starts, change the command line to **device?=c:\dos\ramdrive.sys**.

---

**Note** For security purposes, you can prevent yourself or others from bypassing startup commands when your computer starts. To do this, add the **switches /n** command to your CONFIG.SYS file. For more information, type **help switches** at the command prompt.

---

## Completely Bypassing Your Startup Files

If you are having problems that you suspect are related to commands in your CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT files, you might want to temporarily bypass both files.

► **To bypass your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files**

1. Start or restart your computer. After your computer starts, MS-DOS displays the following text:

Starting MS-DOS...

2. While the text is on your screen, press and release the F5 key or press and hold down the SHIFT key.

MS-DOS displays the following text:

MS-DOS is bypassing your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.

Your computer will start with a basic configuration instead of your usual configuration. Therefore, some parts of your system might not work as they usually do. For example:

- MS-DOS might be unable to find the COMMAND.COM file. If this happens, MS-DOS displays the message “Bad or missing command interpreter” when you start your computer and prompts you to specify the path to the COMMAND.COM file. Type the full path to the file (for example, C:\DOS\COMMAND.COM), and then press ENTER.
- MS-DOS will not load installable device drivers. As a result, any device that requires an installable device driver will not work. For example, your mouse will not work. Also, programs that require expanded or extended memory will be unable to run because MS-DOS will not load expanded- or extended-memory managers.
- MS-DOS will set environment variables to their default values. The command prompt might not appear the way it usually does; it will display the current drive and directory. The search path will be set to the directory that contains your MS-DOS files (usually C:\DOS). You will have to type the complete path and filename of any commands or files that are not located in this directory.

## Confirming Each Startup Command

If you are having problems that you suspect are related to a specific CONFIG.SYS command, you might want to have MS-DOS prompt you to confirm each command when your computer starts.

### ► To confirm each CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT command

1. Start or restart your computer. After your computer starts, MS-DOS displays the following text:

Starting MS-DOS...

2. While the text is on your screen, press and release the F8 key.

MS-DOS displays the following text:

MS-DOS will prompt you to confirm each startup command.

One at a time, MS-DOS displays each command in your CONFIG.SYS file followed by a prompt. For example, when MS-DOS reaches the **dos=high** command, it displays the following prompt:

```
DOS=HIGH [Y,N]?
```

To carry out the current command, press Y for Yes. To bypass that command, press N for No. To carry out all remaining startup commands, press ESC. To bypass all remaining startup commands, press F5.

3. When MS-DOS finishes processing the CONFIG.SYS file, the following prompt appears:

```
Process AUTOEXEC.BAT [Y,N]?
```

To selectively carry out all the commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, press Y for Yes. To bypass your AUTOEXEC.BAT file completely, press N for No.

## Using Multiple Configurations

A single CONFIG.SYS file can define several different system configurations. This can be useful if several people share a single computer or if you want to be able to start your own computer with a choice of configurations.

## Overview of Procedures

This section provides an overview of the procedures for defining multiple configurations.

1. Define a startup menu in your CONFIG.SYS file.

Each time your computer starts, the startup menu appears and lists the available configurations; you choose the configuration you want from the menu. For information about creating a startup menu, see the following section.

2. Create a *configuration block* in your CONFIG.SYS file for each configuration you want.

A configuration block begins with a *block header*—a name surrounded by square brackets. Each block contains the CONFIG.SYS commands that you want MS-DOS to carry out when that configuration is selected from the startup menu. For information about creating configuration blocks, see “Defining Configuration Blocks” later in this chapter.

3. If you want, you can have MS-DOS carry out different AUTOEXEC.BAT commands for each startup configuration. To do this, you can use batch commands such as **if** and **goto** to create conditional branches in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For more information, see “Modifying Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File for Multiple Configurations” later in this chapter.

## Example: Defining Multiple Configurations

The following example shows the basic structure of a CONFIG.SYS file that defines a startup menu and two different configurations.

```
[menu]
menuitem=Green
menuitem=Purple

[green]
files=40
device=c:\device1.sys

[purple]
files=10
device=c:\device2.sys
```

In this example:

- The first configuration block defines the choices that will appear on the startup menu. This startup menu contains two items, Green and Purple. Each menu item refers to a different configuration block.
- The [green] configuration block contains the commands that will be carried out when Green is chosen from the startup menu. When the computer starts with the Green configuration, MS-DOS sets the value for **files** to 40 and loads the DEVICE1.SYS device driver.
- The [purple] configuration block contains the commands for the Purple configuration. When the computer starts with the Purple configuration, MS-DOS sets the value for **files** to 10 and loads the DEVICE2.SYS device driver.

When the computer starts with this CONFIG.SYS file, the following menu appears:

```
MS-DOS Startup Menu
-----

1. Green
2. Purple

Enter a choice: 1
```



If you choose Green from this menu, MS-DOS runs the commands in the [green] configuration block; if you choose Purple, MS-DOS runs the commands in the [purple] configuration block.

The sections in the rest of this chapter explain how to carry out each of the procedures that were introduced in this overview.

## Defining a Startup Menu

To use multiple configurations, you must define a startup menu. To do this, create a configuration block with the block heading **[menu]**. The following table lists the commands a menu block can contain.

Command	Purpose
<b>menuitem</b>	Defines a menu item. The command specifies the configuration block associated with that item and, optionally, the menu text for that item. For more information, type <b>help menuitem</b> at the command prompt.
<b>menudefault</b>	Specifies the default menu item. This command is optional; if the <b>[menu]</b> block does not contain a <b>menudefault</b> command, the default is set to item 1. The <b>menudefault</b> command can include an optional time-out value; if you don't select an item within the specified time, MS-DOS starts your computer using the default configuration. For more information, type <b>help menudefault</b> at the command prompt.
<b>menucolor</b>	Sets the text and background colors for the menu. (For more information, including the list of color values, type <b>help menucolor</b> at the command prompt.)
<b>submenu</b>	Specifies a menu item that displays another set of choices. The command specifies another menu block that defines the choices on the submenu. For more information, type <b>help submenu</b> at the command prompt.
<b>numlock</b>	Specifies whether the NUM LOCK key should be on or off when you start your computer. For more information, type <b>help numlock</b> at the command prompt.

### Example: Defining a Sample [Menu] Block

The following is a sample **[menu]** block:

```
[menu]
menuitem=Net, Start the network
menuitem=No_Net, Do not start the network
menucolor=15,1
menudefault=Net, 20
```

In this example:

- The two **menuitem** commands define the items that will appear on the menu. The first **menuitem** value, “Net,” specifies the name of the associated configuration block. The second value, which is optional, specifies the text you want to display on the menu (“Start the network”). If you don’t specify any menu text, MS-DOS uses the name of the configuration block.

In this example, the first **menuitem** command is associated with the [net] block; the menu text is “Start the network.” The second **menuitem** command is associated with the [no\_net] block; the menu text is “Do not start the network.”

- The **menucolor** command sets the text color to 15 (bright white) and the background color to 1 (blue).
- The **menudefault** command specifies [net] as the default configuration and sets a time-out value of 20 seconds. If no item is selected within the specified time, MS-DOS starts the computer with the default configuration.

## Defining Configuration Blocks

A configuration block is a set of CONFIG.SYS commands that you want MS-DOS to run when a particular configuration is chosen from the startup menu. A configuration block begins with a block header—the block name surrounded by brackets. The block name must be a single word, but can be as long as you want. When MS-DOS starts with a particular configuration, it carries out all the commands between the block header for that configuration and the next block header.

A configuration block can contain any CONFIG.SYS command. The following commands can be particularly useful in configuration blocks:

- The **set** command sets the value of an environment variable. You can use this command in your CONFIG.SYS file to set unique values for each configuration. For more information about the **set** command, type **help set** at the command prompt.
- The **include** command directs MS-DOS to carry out the commands in another configuration block in addition to the commands in the current block. For more information, see “Example: Using the Include Command” later in this chapter, or type **help include** at the command prompt.

Commands common to all configuration blocks can be placed in a block named [**common**]. MS-DOS carries out the commands in a [**common**] block for every configuration. You can have as many [**common**] blocks as you want; MS-DOS runs [**common**] commands in the order in which they appear.

You might want to place a **[common]** block at the end of your CONFIG.SYS file, even if the block doesn't contain any commands. Some applications append commands to your CONFIG.SYS file when you install them. If your CONFIG.SYS file ends with a **[common]** block, an application can append commands to the file and MS-DOS will carry out those commands for all your configurations.

---

**Note** If you plan to optimize your CONFIG.SYS file by using the MemMaker program, you might want to avoid using the **include** command or **[common]** blocks, since these can complicate the optimization process. For instructions on using MemMaker with multiple configurations, see the chapter "Making More Memory Available."

---

## Example: Using [Common] Blocks

The following CONFIG.SYS file defines two configurations and includes several commands that are common to both:

```
[menu]
menuitem=Steve
menuitem=Lisa

[common]
dos=high
buffers=15
device=c:\dos\himem.sys

[steve]
files=20
device=c:\dos\emm386.exe 2048

[lisa]
files=40
device=c:\net\network.sys

[common]
```

This CONFIG.SYS file configures the computer for either Steve or Lisa. For both configurations, MS-DOS carries out the three commands in the first **[common]** block: **dos=high**, **buffers=15**, and **device=c:\dos\himem.sys**. In this case, the **[common]** block appears first because it contains the device command for HIMEM.SYS, which must be loaded before other commands. Steve uses a desktop publishing program that requires expanded memory, so his configuration includes a command for EMM386. He does not use the network. Lisa uses the network but not desktop publishing. Her configuration starts the network driver. The **[common]** block at the end is for commands that might be added when you install new applications.

## Example: Using the Include Command

You can include the contents of one configuration block in another by using the **include** command, which specifies the name of the block you want to include. The **include** command can be used only within a configuration block.

The following CONFIG.SYS file defines several configuration blocks and uses the **include** command to include the [windows] and [network] blocks in the [winnet] block:

```
[menu]
menuitem=Windows, Configure for Windows
menuitem=Network, Start the network
menuitem=WinNet, Configure for Windows and start the network

[common]
files=40
buffers=20
device=c:\dos\himem.sys
dos=high

[windows]
set path=c:\windows;c:\dos
set temp=c:\windows\temp

[network]
device=c:\net\network.sys
set path=c:\dos;c:\network
lastdrive=z

[winnet]
include=windows
include=network
set path=c:\windows;c:\network;c:\dos

[common]
```

This CONFIG.SYS file includes three configurations: Windows, Network, and WinNet. The [winnet] configuration block includes the commands in the [windows] and [network] configuration blocks, in addition to its own **path** command. The first [**common**] block in this CONFIG.SYS file includes commands common to all configurations. The last [**common**] block, which is currently empty, is for commands that might be added to your CONFIG.SYS file when you install new applications.



## Modifying Your AUTOEXEC.BAT File for Multiple Configurations

When you use multiple configurations, you might want to have MS-DOS carry out different AUTOEXEC.BAT commands for each one. You can create branches in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file by using batch commands such as **if** and **goto**. (For more information about batch commands, type **help batch** at the command prompt.)

When a configuration is selected from the startup menu, MS-DOS defines an environment variable named CONFIG and sets it to the name of the selected configuration block. In your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, you can use the **goto** command to have MS-DOS carry out different sets of commands for different CONFIG values.

► **To define multiple configurations in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file**

1. Insert the following command in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
goto %config%
```

The command should appear *after* any commands you want MS-DOS to carry out for all configurations.

2. Add labels to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file that match the names of the corresponding configuration blocks in your CONFIG.SYS file. The labels should appear before the group of commands for each configuration. For example, you would insert the following label before the group of commands for the [steve] configuration:

```
:steve
```

3. Insert the following label at the end of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
:end
```

4. After the group of commands for each configuration, add the following command:

```
goto end
```

This command directs MS-DOS to the line marked by the **:end** label. Any commands that appear after that line are carried out for both configurations.

---

**Note** You can also use the **if** command to test the value of the CONFIG variable. If you do, you must enclose the CONFIG variable both in percent marks (%) and double quotation marks ("), as in the following example: "%CONFIG%". For information about the **if** command, type **help if** at the command prompt.

---

## Example: Using the Goto Command with the CONFIG Variable

The following AUTOEXEC.BAT file uses the **goto** command with the CONFIG variable to carry out different sets of commands. This AUTOEXEC.BAT file is designed to work with the “Steve and Lisa” sample CONFIG.SYS file in “Defining Configuration Blocks” earlier in this chapter.

```
c:\dos\smartdrv.exe
set temp=c:\temp
c:\dos\msav

rem Go to the section that matches the current
rem value of the CONFIG variable
goto %config%

:Steve
path c:\dos;c:\desktop;c:\typeset
c:\mouse\mouse.com
desktop
rem now skip Lisa's section and go to end
goto end

:Lisa
path=c:\dos;c:\network;c:\utility
doskey
net logon lisa /y
goto end

:end
```

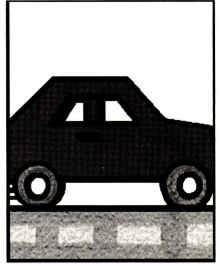
When MS-DOS runs this AUTOEXEC.BAT file, it starts SMARTDrive, sets the TEMP environment variable, and starts the Microsoft Anti-Virus program. MS-DOS then goes to the section that matches the value of the CONFIG variable.

If the name of the selected configuration is “Steve,” MS-DOS goes to the Steve section. It then sets the search path for Steve, loads the MOUSE.COM program from the C:\MOUSE directory, and runs the desktop publishing program. The **goto end** command instructs MS-DOS to skip to the line marked by the **:end** label, bypassing the commands in the Lisa section.

If the current configuration is “Lisa,” the PATH variable is set differently, MS-DOS runs the Doskey program, and a **net logon** command reestablishes Lisa’s persistent network connections.

## CHAPTER 5

# Freeing Disk Space



Floppy disks and hard disks are the most common types of storage media for computers. They provide both long-term and temporary storage for program and data files. Files are stored on a disk magnetically, much as sound is stored on a cassette tape. When you store files on a disk, they use up some of the available space on that disk.

Your hard disk should always contain some free disk space. You need free disk space to save documents and other data files. In addition, many programs create temporary files and store them on your hard disk while they're running. These programs might not run properly if you do not have enough free disk space.

Keep track of how much disk space is available on your computer. You can use the **chkdsk** and **dir** commands to do this. For information about these commands, type **help chkdsk** or **help dir** at the command prompt.

You can make more disk space available in two ways. You can:

- Free disk space by deleting unnecessary files. For more information about deleting files, including a list of MS-DOS files you might want to delete, see the following section.
- Reclaim wasted disk space by running ScanDisk. For more information, type **help scandisk** at the MS-DOS command prompt or see the section "Using ScanDisk to Free Disk Space" later in this chapter.

The rest of this chapter explains both methods.

## Deleting Unnecessary Files

Disk space is a valuable system resource. If you need more disk space, one solution is to delete unnecessary files. You might want to delete files in one or more of the following categories:

- Program and data files that you no longer use.
- Temporary files that were left on your hard disk when a program stopped running unexpectedly.
- Files that were installed with MS-DOS that you don't plan to use. The tables at the end of this section list the MS-DOS files you might want to delete.
- Lost clusters, which can take up space on your hard disk. For more information about finding lost clusters, converting them to files, and deleting those files, see the following section, "Using ScanDisk to Free Disk Space."

In general, keep as much disk space free as possible. To delete unnecessary files, use the **del** command. For information about the **del** command, type **help del** at the command prompt.

Use the following guidelines to decide which files to delete:

- Delete any temporary files created by your programs.

Many programs create temporary files while they are running. Some programs store those files in a directory specified by the TEMP environment variable. To determine whether your computer has a directory designated for temporary files, type **set** at the command prompt, and then check the value that MS-DOS displays for the TEMP variable. For more information about environment variables, type **help set** at the command prompt.

Periodically delete any files in the directory specified by the TEMP environment variable. (This is not necessary if the directory is on a RAM disk.) To avoid deleting a temporary file that is currently in use, quit all programs (including Windows and MS-DOS Shell) before deleting files in the directory specified by the TEMP variable.

- If you haven't used a file in a long time, consider copying it to a floppy disk and then deleting it from your hard disk. You can use Microsoft Backup to archive files. For more information about using Backup, see the chapter "Managing Your System."
- If you are sure you will not need to restore your previous version of DOS, you can delete the OLD\_DOS.x directory and the files it contains. To do this, type **deloldos** at the command prompt, and then follow the instructions on your screen.



- As a last resort, delete some MS-DOS files that you do not plan to use.

---

**Caution** Do not delete any MS-DOS files other than the ones listed in the following tables. Never delete the files COMMAND.COM, IO.SYS, or MSDOS.SYS. (These files typically have Hidden or System attributes.) If you delete any of these files, you might lose data or your system might not start.

Also, be sure you quit all programs (including Windows and MS-DOS Shell) before deleting any temporary files.

---

Use the following tables to determine which MS-DOS files you can delete.

Filename(s)	Description	When to delete
APPEND.EXE	Enables programs to open data files as if they were in the current directory, even when they are not	If you do not plan to use the <b>append</b> command
NLSFUNC.EXE, KEYB.COM, *.CPI, COUNTRY.SYS, DISPLAY.SYS, KEYBOARD.SYS	Provide international and character-set support	If you do not need international (foreign language) support
RAMDRIVE.SYS	RAMDrive memory-disk program; speeds up your system	If you do not need a RAM disk, or if your computer has only conventional memory
POWER.EXE	Conserves battery power on a laptop computer	If your computer is not a laptop
INTERLNK.*, INTERSVR.*	Connect two computers via parallel or serial ports so that the two computers can share disks and printer ports	If you do not plan to use the Interlnk program
EMM386.EXE, MEMMAKER.*, SIZER.EXE, CHKSTATE.SYS	Manage and optimize memory on an 80386 or higher computer	If your computer is not an 80386 or higher, or if it has no extended memory
SMARTDRV.EXE	SMARTDrive disk-caching program; speeds up your system	If your computer does not have a hard disk, or if it has no extended memory

The directory that contains your current MS-DOS files might still include files from your previous version of DOS. The following table lists files from previous versions of DOS that you might want to delete.

Filename(s)	Description	When to delete
4201.CPI, 4208.CPI, 5202.CPI, LCD.CPI, PRINTER.SYS	Provide international and character-set support for certain printers.	If you do not plan to download different character sets to an IBM Proprinter® model 4201, 4202, 4207, or to an IBM Quietwriter® model 5202.
GRAFTABL.COM	Provides international support for CGA monitors.	If you do not need international support for a CGA monitor.
ASSIGN.COM	Redirects requests for disk operations on one drive to a different drive.	You can safely delete this file; use the <b>subst</b> command instead.
CV.COM, EXE2BIN.EXE, LINK.EXE, GWBASIC.*, BASICA.*, *.BAS	Programming tools and sample files.	If you do not plan to do any programming.
DOSSHELL.*, *.VID	The MS-DOS Shell program.	If you do not plan to use MS-DOS Shell
EDLIN.EXE	A line-oriented text editor.	If you do not use Edlin. You can safely delete this file; use the <b>edit</b> command, which starts MS-DOS Editor, instead.
HDBKUP.EXE, HDRSTORE.EXE	Used during MS-DOS 5 Setup to back up and restore files.	You can safely delete these files; they are not necessary with this version of MS-DOS.
JOIN.EXE	Joins a disk drive with a directory on another drive.	If you do not plan to use the <b>join</b> command.
MSHERC.COM	Provides support for a Hercules monitor running with MS-DOS Editor or QBasic.	If you do not have a Hercules monitor.

Filename(s)	Description	When to delete
PRINTFIX.COM	Disables verification of a printer's status.	If you are not currently using the Printfix program and you can successfully use your printer.
SMARTDRV.SYS	The version of the SMARTDrive program that came with MS-DOS 5.	You can safely delete this file. The current program file for SMARTDrive is named SMARTDRV.EXE.

## Using ScanDisk to Free Disk Space

You can use the **scandisk** command to recover lost *clusters* that are taking up space on your hard disk. A cluster is a unit of storage that can get “lost” when a program unexpectedly stops running without saving or deleting temporary files properly. A lost cluster is marked as being in use, but it actually contains no useful data. Over time, lost clusters can accumulate and take up disk space.

When ScanDisk finds lost clusters, it prompts you to specify whether you want to save them. If you choose to save them, ScanDisk converts them to files that have a .CHK extension. You can then examine the contents of these .CHK files and delete them if they contain information you don't need.

---

**Caution** Before starting ScanDisk, quit all running applications, including Windows. You might also need to disable the commands that load memory-resident programs in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files and restart your computer. (You do not need to disable any memory-resident programs that came with MS-DOS.) If you use the **scandisk** command while programs are running, you might lose data.

---

► **To recover lost clusters**

1. Quit all running programs.
2. Change to the hard disk you want to check (for example, if you want to recover lost clusters on drive C, type **c:** at the command prompt).

3. Type the following at the command prompt:

**scandisk**

The ScanDisk program checks the drive for problems, including lost clusters. If ScanDisk finds lost clusters, it prompts you to specify whether you want to save them. To save the information the lost clusters contain, choose Save.

The ScanDisk program converts any lost clusters to files with filenames such as FILE0000.CHK. It stores these files in your root directory.

Once in a while, a .CHK file contains information you want to keep. For example, if a word-processing application stops unexpectedly before you save your edits, you might find your lost edits in a recovered .CHK file.

4. To examine the contents of .CHK files, use the **more** command.

For example, to examine the contents of the FILE0000.CHK file, you would type the following at the command prompt: **more < file0000.chk**

If the file contains more than one screen of information, press any key to see the next screen.

5. Delete any .CHK files you don't want by using the **del** command. For example, to delete the FILE0000.CHK file, type the following at the command prompt:

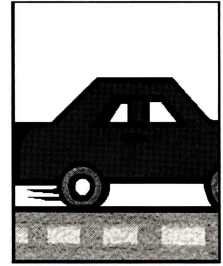
**del file0000.chk**

For more information about the **scandisk**, **more**, or **del** commands, type **help scandisk**, **help more**, or **help del** at the command prompt.



## CHAPTER 6

# Making More Memory Available



Memory (also called random-access memory, or RAM) provides temporary storage for programs and data. It resides on the main system board of your computer or on add-on memory boards.

All programs need memory to run. Some require more memory than others. How much memory is available affects which programs you can run, how fast they run, and how much data a program can work with at one time.

If you're having trouble running programs because your computer doesn't have enough memory, you can:

- Install additional physical memory. Typically, this involves plugging a memory board into a slot inside your computer or adding more memory to an existing memory board.
- Make the most of the memory your computer already has. One way to do this is to run the MemMaker memory-optimization program, which adjusts the way your device drivers and programs use memory.

This chapter explains how to make the most of the memory you have by adjusting your system's memory configuration.

## Identifying Your Computer's Memory Configuration

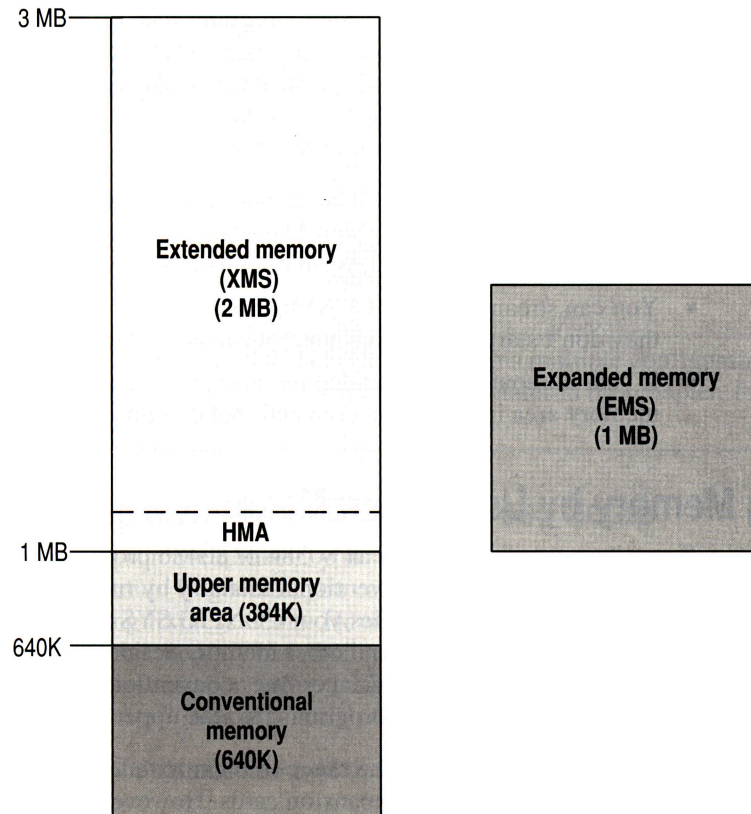
It's important to know how much and what type of memory your computer has. To display information about your computer's memory, type **mem** at the command prompt.

The **mem** command displays a summary of your computer's memory configuration. It shows how much of each kind of memory your computer has, how much is currently in use, and how much is currently free. For more information about the **mem** command, type **help mem** at the command prompt.

The following table describes the kinds of memory your computer might have.

Type of memory	Description
Conventional memory	Up to the first 640 kilobytes (K) of memory on a computer. Because MS-DOS manages conventional memory, you don't need an additional memory manager to use conventional memory. All MS-DOS-based programs require conventional memory.
Upper memory area	The 384K of memory above your computer's 640K of conventional memory. The upper memory area is used by system hardware, such as your display adapter. Unused parts of the upper memory area are called <i>upper memory blocks</i> (UMBs). On an 80386 or 80486 computer, UMBs can be used for running device drivers and memory-resident programs. (If you are using an upper-memory-area manager other than EMM386, or if you use the <b>mem</b> command while Windows version 3.0 is running, the <b>mem</b> command will not report information about upper memory.)
Extended memory (XMS)	Memory beyond 1 megabyte (MB) on computers with 80286, 80386, or 80486 processors. Extended memory requires an extended-memory manager, such as HIMEM. Windows and Windows-based applications require extended memory.
High memory area (HMA)	The first 64K of extended memory. On a computer with extended memory, Setup installs MS-DOS to run in the high memory area. This leaves more conventional memory available for programs.
Expanded memory (EMS)	Memory in addition to conventional memory that some MS-DOS-based applications can use. Most personal computers can accommodate expanded memory. Expanded memory is installed on an expanded-memory board and comes with an expanded-memory manager. Programs use expanded memory 64K at a time by addressing a part of the upper memory area called an EMS page frame. Because an expanded-memory manager gives access to a limited amount of expanded memory at a time, using expanded memory is slower than using extended memory. EMM386 can simulate expanded memory for programs that require it. Although Windows and Windows-based applications do not use expanded memory, Windows can also simulate expanded memory for MS-DOS-based applications that need it.

The following illustration shows the memory configuration of a typical computer:



This illustration shows the memory configuration of a computer that has 640K of conventional memory and 2 MB of extended memory. The computer also has an expanded-memory board that contains 1 MB of expanded memory.

## Freeing Conventional Memory

Most programs require conventional memory to run. If a program fails to run because of insufficient memory, the problem is most often because there is insufficient conventional memory.

---

**Note** If you receive an out-of-memory message while running Windows and Windows-based applications, it's more likely that the problem is insufficient extended memory. For more information, see "Freeing Extended Memory" later in this chapter.

---

You can make more conventional memory available for applications by minimizing how much conventional memory MS-DOS, installable device drivers, and other memory-resident programs use. (Memory-resident programs are sometimes called terminate-and-stay-resident programs, or TSRs.) On many computers, device drivers and memory-resident programs take up so much conventional memory that there is not enough left over for other programs. You can free conventional memory in several ways:

- If you have an 80386 or 80486 computer with extended memory, you can run the MemMaker program. MemMaker moves device drivers and other memory-resident programs from conventional memory to the upper memory area.
- You can streamline your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files so that they don't start unnecessary memory-resident programs.
- If your computer has extended memory, you can run MS-DOS in the high memory area instead of in conventional memory.

## Optimizing Memory by Using MemMaker

If you have a computer with an 80386 or 80486 processor and extended memory, you may be able to free conventional memory by running the MemMaker program. MemMaker modifies your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files so that your device drivers and other memory-resident programs use less conventional memory. MemMaker frees conventional memory by loading some of those device drivers and programs into the upper memory area.

The *upper memory area* is the range of memory addresses that is normally set aside for use by hardware expansion cards. However, on most computers, hardware expansion cards do not use up the entire upper memory area. The unused areas of upper memory are called *upper memory blocks* (UMBs). You can use UMBs for running installable device drivers and other memory-resident programs. Moving these programs out of conventional memory makes more conventional memory available for other programs.

---

**Note** The EMM386 memory manager makes UMBs available by mapping extended memory to unused addresses in the upper memory area. Because of this, running programs in upper memory uses up some extended memory. Therefore, you might not need to run MemMaker if you use only Windows and Windows-based applications. Windows and Windows-based applications need as much free extended memory as possible. Running MemMaker frees conventional memory, but can result in less free extended memory. For more information about freeing extended memory, see “Freeing Extended Memory” later in this chapter. (If you run MS-DOS-based applications with Windows, run MemMaker. MS-DOS-based applications need free conventional memory even when running with Windows.)

---



## Before You Run MemMaker

To prepare your computer to run MemMaker, do the following:

- Make sure your system's hardware and memory work properly, and that your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files do not start any unnecessary programs. (For more information, see "Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files" later in this chapter.)
- Quit any programs that are running.
- Start any hardware or memory-resident programs that you usually use. For example, if you use a network, start the network.

---

**Important** If your CONFIG.SYS file contains multiple configurations, see "Using MemMaker with Multiple Configurations," later in this chapter, before you run MemMaker.

---

## Running MemMaker Using Express Setup

When you run MemMaker, you will be prompted to choose between Express and Custom Setup. In general, you can successfully optimize your system's memory by choosing Express Setup. However, sometimes MemMaker can free more conventional memory if you choose Custom Setup and then change some settings. For more information about using Custom Setup, see "Running MemMaker Using Custom Setup" later in this chapter.

The following procedure explains how to run MemMaker using Express Setup.

### ► To run MemMaker using Express Setup

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**memmaker**

MemMaker displays the Welcome screen.

2. Choose the Continue option by pressing ENTER.

MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to choose between Express and Custom Setup.

3. Choose Express Setup by pressing ENTER.

MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to specify whether you use any programs that require expanded memory.

4. If none of your programs require expanded memory, or if you are not sure whether your programs require expanded memory, choose No by pressing ENTER.

If you use programs that require expanded memory, select Yes by pressing the SPACEBAR, and then press ENTER. For more information about this screen, press F1.

If you use Windows, MemMaker might prompt you to provide more information. If it does, follow the instructions on your screen. (For information about a screen, press F1.)

MemMaker displays a screen stating that it is ready to restart your computer.

5. To restart your computer, press ENTER.

As each device driver and memory-resident program starts, MemMaker determines the program's memory requirements by monitoring how it allocates memory. (If your computer doesn't start properly, don't worry: just press CTRL+ALT+DEL or turn your computer off and on again. MemMaker will recover. For more information, see "Troubleshooting While Using MemMaker" later in this chapter.)

After your computer has restarted, MemMaker uses the information it gathered to determine the optimum memory configuration for your computer. MemMaker fits your device drivers and memory-resident programs into the available UMBs as efficiently as possible. To do this, MemMaker may consider thousands of possible memory configurations before selecting the most efficient one. Even so, this process usually takes only a few seconds.

When its calculations are complete, MemMaker makes the necessary changes to your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, and then displays a screen stating that it is ready to restart your computer using the new configuration.

6. To restart your computer with its new configuration, press ENTER.

Your computer starts with its new memory configuration. Watch carefully as device drivers and programs display their startup messages, and note any unusual messages.

After your computer has restarted, MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to specify whether your system appears to be working properly.

7. If you did not see any error messages during startup and your system appears to work properly, choose Yes by pressing ENTER. (If your system later turns out not to work properly, you can undo MemMaker's changes. For more information, see "Undoing the Changes MemMaker Made" later in this chapter.)

If you suspect that your system is not working properly, press the SPACEBAR to select No, and then press ENTER. Then follow the instructions on your screen. For more information, press F1, or see “Troubleshooting While Using MemMaker” later in this chapter.

If you indicated that your computer is working properly, MemMaker displays a final screen that shows the amount of each type of memory available before and after you ran MemMaker.

8. To quit MemMaker, press ENTER.

---

**Note** When MemMaker changes your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, it might add some new commands or edit existing commands. For example, MemMaker might add or change some switches on your EMM386.EXE command line. MemMaker also changes certain **device** commands to **devicehigh** commands and adds switches to those **devicehigh** commands. In your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, MemMaker adds the **loadhigh (lh)** command to the beginning of certain commands, and also adds switches to those **loadhigh** commands.

---

## Running MemMaker Using Custom Setup

Express Setup works well for most computers. However, in some situations you can free more conventional memory by using Custom Setup. The following list describes the situations in which you should use Custom Setup.

- If you have an EGA or VGA monitor (but not a Super VGA monitor), choose Custom Setup, and then answer Yes to the advanced option “Use monochrome region (B000-B7FF) for running programs?”
- If you do not run MS-DOS–based applications with Windows, choose Custom Setup, and then answer No to the advanced option “Optimize upper memory for use with Windows?”
- If a device driver or program has been causing problems when you run MemMaker (for example, if it causes your computer to stop responding), choose Custom Setup, and then answer Yes to the advanced option “Specify which drivers and TSRs to include in optimization?” (You can permanently exclude a driver or program from the optimization process by adding its name to the MEMMAKER.INF file. This file is located in the same directory as the MEMMAKER.EXE file. For more information, open the MEMMAKER.INF file and read the comments it contains.)



► **To run MemMaker using Custom Setup**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

**memmaker**

MemMaker displays the Welcome screen.

2. Choose the Continue option by pressing ENTER.

MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to choose between Express and Custom Setup.

3. Select Custom Setup by pressing the SPACEBAR, and then press ENTER.

MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to specify whether you use any programs that require expanded memory.

4. If none of your programs require expanded memory, or if you are not sure whether your programs require expanded memory, choose No by pressing ENTER.

If you use programs that require expanded memory, select Yes by pressing the SPACEBAR, and then press ENTER. For more information about this screen, press F1.

The Advanced Options screen appears. The settings on this screen determine how MemMaker configures your computer's memory during optimization.

5. Change the settings on the Advanced Options screen as necessary.

To change an option, press the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key until the Yes or No beside that option is highlighted. Then press the SPACEBAR to change the setting. For information about each setting, press F1.

Be sure to check the setting for each option. Accepting the default settings might change your current configuration.

6. When you have finished changing settings, press ENTER to continue.

If you use Windows, MemMaker might prompt you to provide more information. If it does, follow the instructions on your screen. (For information about a screen, press F1.)

MemMaker displays a screen stating that it is ready to restart your computer.

7. To restart your computer, press ENTER.

As each device driver and memory-resident program starts, MemMaker determines the program's memory requirements by monitoring how it allocates memory. (If your computer doesn't start properly, don't worry: just press CTRL+ALT+DEL or turn your computer off and on again. MemMaker will recover. For more information, see "Troubleshooting While Using MemMaker" later in this chapter.)



After your computer has restarted, MemMaker uses the information it has gathered to determine the optimum memory configuration for your computer. MemMaker fits your device drivers and memory-resident programs into the available UMBs as efficiently as possible. To do this, MemMaker may consider thousands of possible memory configurations before selecting the most efficient one. Even so, this process usually takes only a few seconds.

When its calculations are complete, MemMaker makes the necessary changes to your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, and then displays a screen stating that it is ready to restart your computer using the new configuration.

8. Restart your computer with its new configuration by pressing ENTER.

Your computer starts with its new memory configuration. Watch carefully as device drivers and programs display their startup messages and note any unusual messages.

After your computer has restarted, MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to specify whether your system appears to be working properly.

9. If you did not see any error messages during startup and your system appears to work properly, choose Yes by pressing ENTER. (If your system later turns out not to work properly, you can undo MemMaker's changes. For more information, see the following section.)

If you suspect that your system is not working properly, press the SPACEBAR to select No, and then press ENTER. Then follow the instructions on your screen. For more information, press F1, or see "Troubleshooting While Using MemMaker" later in this chapter.

If you indicated that your computer is working properly, MemMaker displays a final screen that shows the amount of each type of memory available before and after you ran MemMaker.

10. To quit MemMaker, press ENTER.

---

**Note** When MemMaker changes your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, it might add some new commands or edit existing commands. For example, MemMaker might add or change some switches on your EMM386.EXE command line. MemMaker also changes certain **device** commands to **devicehigh** commands and adds switches to those **devicehigh** commands. In your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, MemMaker adds the **loadhigh (lh)** command to the beginning of certain commands, and also adds switches to those **loadhigh** commands.

---

## Undoing the Changes MemMaker Made

MemMaker changes your system's memory configuration by editing the commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files (and sometimes your Windows SYSTEM.INI file). Before changing these files, MemMaker makes a backup copy of each one.

If you encounter problems during the optimization process, you can have MemMaker undo the changes it made by restoring the previous versions of your CONFIG.SYS, AUTOEXEC.BAT, and SYSTEM.INI files.

You can undo MemMaker's changes even after quitting MemMaker. You might want to do this if, after completing MemMaker, you discover that your system does not work properly with its new memory configuration. After undoing the changes, you can rerun MemMaker using Custom Setup and specify different settings to avoid the problem.

### ► To undo MemMaker's changes

1. Quit any running programs.
2. Start MemMaker by typing the following at the command prompt:

**memmaker /undo**

A screen appears, prompting you to choose between restoring your original system files and quitting MemMaker.

3. To restore your original files, press ENTER. MemMaker displays a confirmation screen.
4. If the screen shows that MemMaker has finished restoring your startup files, press ENTER to restart your computer with its original configuration.

If you have edited your CONFIG.SYS, AUTOEXEC.BAT, or SYSTEM.INI files since you last ran MemMaker, MemMaker displays a screen stating that your changes to those files will be lost when MemMaker replaces them with backup files. To restore the previous versions of the files, press Y, and then press ENTER to restart your computer with its original configuration.

## Fine-Tuning Your Memory Configuration

After you run MemMaker, you might want to fine-tune your memory configuration to free additional memory. You can use the following techniques:

- Run MemMaker again and change some memory-configuration options. For more information, see the following section.
- Change the order of device drivers and programs in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. For more information, see "Freeing Additional Memory by Changing the Order of Commands in Your Startup Files" later in this section.

- Remove unnecessary device drivers and memory-resident programs from your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. For more information, see “Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files” later in this chapter.

### **Freeing Additional Memory by Changing MemMaker Options**

To try to free additional memory, you can run MemMaker again and change some memory-configuration options. The rest of this section explains some situations in which changing MemMaker options can free additional memory.

#### **If you do not use programs that require expanded memory**

If none of your programs require expanded memory, run MemMaker again (you can choose either Custom or Express Setup). When MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to indicate whether you use any programs that require expanded memory, choose No.

Choosing No disables expanded memory and frees an additional 64K of upper memory. If you choose No and then have problems running programs (for example, a program won't start, or it displays a message such as “EMS Page Frame Not Found” or “Expanded Memory Unavailable”), run MemMaker again and answer Yes to the same question.

#### **If your computer has an EGA or VGA monitor**

If your computer has an EGA or VGA monitor (but not a Super VGA monitor), run MemMaker again and choose Custom Setup. When MemMaker displays the Advanced Options screen, answer Yes to the question “Use monochrome region (B000-B7FF) for running programs?”

Answering Yes to this question frees additional upper memory. If you answer Yes, then later have problems with your monitor (for example, a program doesn't display correctly), or if your computer stops responding when you start Windows, run MemMaker again and answer No to the same question.

#### **If you do not run MS-DOS-based applications with Windows**

If you do not run MS-DOS-based applications with Windows, run MemMaker again and choose Custom Setup. When MemMaker displays the Advanced Options screen, answer No to the question “Optimize upper memory for use with Windows?”

Answering No to this question can free additional conventional memory when you are not running Windows. However, while you are running Windows, less conventional memory will be available for MS-DOS-based (non-Windows)



applications. If you answer No, then encounter memory problems when you run MS-DOS-based applications with Windows, run MemMaker again and answer Yes to the same question.

For more information about using Custom Setup, see “Running MemMaker Using Custom Setup” earlier in this chapter.

### **Freeing Additional Memory by Changing the Order of Commands in Your Startup Files**

When memory-resident programs are loaded into upper memory, it is most efficient to load programs that require more memory before programs that require less memory. Although MemMaker fits your device drivers and memory-resident programs into memory as efficiently as possible, it does not change the order in which those drivers and programs load.

You can fine-tune your memory configuration by changing the order of the commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. When you run MemMaker, it measures the memory requirements of each driver or memory-resident program and stores this information in the MEMMAKER.STS file. You can use the information in this file to determine the optimum order for your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT commands.

When you change the order of commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files:

- Follow the guidelines for determining the order of CONFIG.SYS commands described in the chapter “Configuring Your System.”
- Make sure the HIMEM.SYS and EMM386.EXE command lines appear before any commands that start device drivers or programs you want to run in upper memory.
- If your startup files contain commands that start network drivers or memory-resident programs, do not change the relative order of the network commands.

#### **► To optimize the order of device drivers and memory-resident programs**

1. Create a startup disk by inserting an unformatted floppy disk in drive A and then typing the following at the command prompt:

**format a: /s**



2. Copy your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files to the startup disk you just created by typing the following at the command prompt:

```
copy c:\config.sys a:\  
copy c:\autoexec.bat a:\
```

3. Open the MEMMAKER.STS file by using a text editor such as MS-DOS Editor. The MEMMAKER.STS file is located in the same directory as the MEMMAKER.EXE file.

For example, to open the MEMMAKER.STS file in the C:\DOS directory by using MS-DOS Editor, type the following at the command prompt:

```
edit c:\dos\memmaker.sts
```

4. Find the [SizeData] section in the MEMMAKER.STS file. This section lists the memory requirements of each driver or memory-resident program started by your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. For example, the MEMMAKER.STS file might contain the following information about the SETVER.EXE program:

```
Command=C:\DOS\SETVER.EXE  
Line=9  
FinalSize=672  
MaxSize=12048  
FinalUpperSizes=0  
MaxUpperSizes=0  
ProgramType=DEVICE
```

5. For each driver or memory-resident program, examine the MaxSize line, which specifies the amount of memory the driver or program requires to start and run. The driver or memory-resident program requires a block of memory at least this large to load properly.
6. Print the MEMMAKER.STS file or write down the name of each driver or program and its MaxSize value.
7. Quit the text editor you used to open the MEMMAKER.STS file. (Do not save any changes to the file.) If you are using MS-DOS Editor, quit by pressing ALT, F, X.

8. Open your CONFIG.SYS file and move commands that load device drivers or programs with larger MaxSize values before those with smaller MaxSize values. (However, make sure the HIMEM.SYS and EMM386.EXE command lines appear before commands that start other drivers or programs. For guidelines in determining the order of commands in your CONFIG.SYS file, see “Configuring Your System by Using CONFIG.SYS Commands” in the chapter “Configuring Your System.”)

---

**Note** When you run MS-DOS Setup, it adds a command that starts the SETVER program to the beginning of your CONFIG.SYS file. If you use only the HIMEM and EMM386 memory managers, you can move the SETVER command line after the EMM386.EXE command line (but before any commands that start programs that require SETVER.) Moving the SETVER.EXE command line after the EMM386.EXE command line makes it possible to run SETVER in the upper memory area.

---

9. Save the changes to your CONFIG.SYS file, and then open your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.
10. In your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, move commands that start programs with larger MaxSize values before those with smaller MaxSize values.
11. Save the changes to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, and then quit the text editor.
12. Remove any disks from your floppy disk drives, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
13. If your system starts properly, run MemMaker to optimize your revised CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. To do this, follow the instructions in “Running MemMaker Using Express Setup” or “Running MemMaker Using Custom Setup” earlier in this chapter. (You might be able to free additional memory by changing some MemMaker options. For more information, see the previous section, “Freeing Additional Memory by Changing MemMaker Options.”)

If your computer, hardware devices, or programs do not work properly with your revised CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, you might need to restore the backup copies of those files. For example, if the backup copies are on a floppy disk in drive A, you would type the following at the command prompt:

```
copy a:\config.sys c:\config.sys
copy a:\autoexec.bat c:\autoexec.bat
```

## Using MemMaker with Multiple Configurations

If your CONFIG.SYS file defines multiple startup configurations, run MemMaker by carrying out the procedures in this section. If you run MemMaker without following these procedures, your computer might not start properly after MemMaker revises your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.

### ► To optimize your computer's memory for multiple configurations

1. Create a separate set of CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files for each configuration on your startup menu. Each set should contain only the commands for that configuration. For instructions on creating these files, see the following section, "Creating CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files for Each Configuration."
2. Run MemMaker separately for each configuration. For instructions on how to do this, see "Running MemMaker for Each Configuration" later in this chapter.
3. Combine the optimized CONFIG.SYS files into a single multiple-configuration CONFIG.SYS file; combine the AUTOEXEC.BAT files into a single AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For instructions on combining the files, see "Combining the Optimized Files into New CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files" later in this chapter.

For instructions on creating multiple startup configurations, see the chapter "Configuring Your System" earlier in this guide.

## Creating CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files for Each Configuration

First, create a set of CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files for each configuration. Each set will contain only the commands for that configuration.

### ► To create separate startup files for each configuration

1. In the root directory of your startup drive (usually drive C), make one copy of your CONFIG.SYS file for each item on your startup menu, and give each copy a name that matches the corresponding item number. To do this, use the **copy** command. For example, if your startup menu contains three items, you could type the following at the command prompt:

**copy config.sys config.1**

**copy config.sys config.2**

**copy config.sys config.3**

2. Make one copy of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file for each item on your Startup menu. For example, if your startup menu contains three items, you could type the following at the command prompt:

```
copy autoexec.bat autoexec.1  
copy autoexec.bat autoexec.2  
copy autoexec.bat autoexec.3
```

3. Open each copy of your CONFIG.SYS file by using a text editor such as MS-DOS Editor. Edit the file so that it can be used as a single-configuration CONFIG.SYS file. Delete the menu-definition commands (the commands in the **[menu]** section) and any commands that do not apply to the configuration that corresponds to the file's extension. For example, leave in the CONFIG.1 file only those commands that are necessary to start your computer with the configuration for startup menu item 1. Save the file when you have finished.

Repeat this step for each copy of your CONFIG.SYS file. In each file, keep only the commands that are necessary to start the computer with that configuration.

4. Open each copy of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Delete the **goto config** command and any commands that do not apply to the configuration that corresponds to the file's extension. For example, leave in the AUTOEXEC.1 file only those commands that are necessary to start your computer with the configuration for startup menu item 1. Save the file when you have finished.

Repeat this step for each copy of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. In each file, keep only the commands that are necessary to start the computer with that configuration.

5. Quit the text editor.

When you have carried out this procedure, the root directory of your startup drive should contain your original CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, as well as one set of CONFIG.x and AUTOEXEC.x files for each startup menu item.

## Running MemMaker for Each Configuration

To optimize your system's memory, you will need to run MemMaker for each configuration.

### ► To optimize memory for each configuration

1. Rename your original CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files by typing the following at the command prompt:

```
ren config.sys config.bak  
ren autoexec.bat autoexec.bak
```



2. Rename one set of the CONFIG.*x* and AUTOEXEC.*x* files to CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT. For example, to rename the set of files you created for startup menu item 1, you would type the following at the command prompt:

```
ren config.1 config.sys  
ren autoexec.1 autoexec.bat
```

3. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
4. To optimize the current CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, run MemMaker by typing **memmaker** at the command prompt, and then follow the instructions on your screen. For more information, see “Running MemMaker Using Express Setup” or “Running MemMaker Using Custom Setup” earlier in this chapter.
5. When MemMaker is complete, rename the current CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files to their original filenames. For example, to rename the set of files you created for startup menu item 1, you would type the following:  

```
ren config.sys config.1  
ren autoexec.bat autoexec.1
```
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for each additional set of CONFIG.*x* and AUTOEXEC.*x* files you created.

### Combining the Optimized Files into New CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files

Once you have optimized each configuration separately, you need to combine the separate files into a single set of CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. The exact procedure for this will depend on the contents of your files. The rest of this section gives some tips on how to merge your files.

The following tips can help you construct a new CONFIG.SYS file:

- Start with a blank CONFIG.SYS file rather than trying to edit your original file.
- Copy the menu-definition commands from the CONFIG.BAK file and paste them into your new CONFIG.SYS file.
- Create a separate configuration block for each item on the menu, and paste the commands from each CONFIG.*x* file into the corresponding configuration block.
- Avoid using [common] blocks or **include** commands. Instead, each configuration block should contain a complete set of commands for that configuration.

The following tips can help you construct a new AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

- Start with a blank AUTOEXEC.BAT file rather than trying to edit your original file.
- Add a **goto %config%** command to the beginning of your new AUTOEXEC.BAT file.
- For each item on your startup menu, add a label to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file with the same name as the corresponding configuration block in your CONFIG.SYS file. For example, if your CONFIG.SYS file contains a configuration block named [Steve], you would add the label **:Steve** to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. (For a sample AUTOEXEC.BAT file that uses labels to define multiple configurations, see the chapter “Configuring Your System.”)

Paste the commands from each AUTOEXEC.x file into your new AUTOEXEC.BAT file after the label that corresponds to that configuration. For example, if the [Steve] configuration is startup menu item 1, you would paste the contents of the AUTOEXEC.1 file immediately after the **:Steve** label in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

- Add a **goto end** command to the end of each section in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file that starts with a label.
- Add an **:end** label to the end of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.
- For the best results, each section of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file should contain a complete set of AUTOEXEC.BAT commands for that configuration.

## Troubleshooting While Using MemMaker

The following topics explain how to solve common problems you might encounter while using MemMaker. If you don't find the help you need in these topics, view the README.TXT file on Setup Disk 1 by using any text editor.

### Your computer stops responding while you are using MemMaker.

If you change MemMaker's options to scan the upper memory area aggressively, your computer might stop responding. If this happens, try using more conservative settings.

### Using Conservative Settings

While it configures your computer's memory, MemMaker restarts your computer twice. If your computer stopped responding when MemMaker restarted it the first time, carry out Procedure 1. If your computer stopped responding after MemMaker restarted it the second time, carry out Procedure 2.

► **Procedure 1 To use more conservative settings**

1. When your computer stops responding, restart it by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. MemMaker automatically restarts.
2. Choose the “Try again with conservative settings” option by pressing ENTER. Your computer restarts, and then processes your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.
3. If your computer runs successfully, follow the instructions on your screen. If your computer stops responding again, carry out the procedure in the following section, “Your computer stops responding again after the ‘MemMaker will now restart your computer’ message appears.”

► **Procedure 2 To use more conservative settings by using Custom Setup**

1. When your computer stops responding, restart it by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. MemMaker automatically restarts.
2. Select the “Exit and undo changes” option by pressing the SPACEBAR, and then press ENTER. Your computer restarts with its original memory configuration.
3. Restart the MemMaker program by typing **memmaker** at the command prompt. When the “Welcome to MemMaker” screen appears, press ENTER.
4. When the second MemMaker screen appears, press the SPACEBAR to select “Custom Setup,” and then press ENTER.
5. Continue with the MemMaker program until the Advanced Options screen appears. Then press the DOWN ARROW key until the “Yes” beside “Scan the upper memory aggressively?” is selected.
6. Press the SPACEBAR to select “No,” and then press ENTER. Follow the instructions on your screen. If your computer stops responding again, carry out the procedure in “Your computer stops responding again after the ‘MemMaker will now restart your computer’ screen appears” later in this chapter.

**Your computer stops responding again after the “MemMaker will now restart your computer” message appears.**

The first step in solving this problem is to determine whether your computer stops responding while MemMaker is loading EMM386.

► **To determine whether your computer stops responding while MemMaker is loading EMM386**

1. When your computer stops responding, restart it by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. MemMaker automatically restarts.
2. Display the “Cancel and undo all changes” option by pressing the SPACEBAR twice, and then press ENTER.

Your computer restarts with its original memory configuration.

3. Restart MemMaker by typing **memmaker** at the command prompt.
4. Follow the instructions on your screen. After MemMaker restarts your computer, MS-DOS displays the following text:

Starting MS-DOS...

5. While the text is on your screen, press and release the F8 key. The following text appears:

MS-DOS will prompt you to confirm each CONFIG.SYS command.

As MS-DOS processes the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file, it displays each command, followed by a prompt. For example, when MS-DOS reaches the **dos=high** command, it displays the following prompt:

DOS=HIGH [Y,N]?

6. Carry out all the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file by pressing Y each time you are prompted.

If your computer stops responding when it is trying to load EMM386, carry out the procedure in “You have tried the troubleshooting procedures, and your computer still stops responding when you run MemMaker” later in this chapter.

If your computer stops responding when it tries to load a device driver other than EMM386, skip the rest of this procedure and carry out the procedure in the following section, “Your computer stops responding while MemMaker is loading a program or device driver other than EMM386.”

If your computer runs successfully, continue to step 7.

7. When MS-DOS finishes processing the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file, it displays the following prompt:

Process AUTOEXEC.BAT [Y,N]?

Press Y to process the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Carry out each of the commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file by pressing Y each time you are prompted.

When your computer stops responding, note which program it is trying to load. Then carry out the procedure in the following section.



**Your computer stops responding while MemMaker is loading a program or device driver other than EMM386.**

If your computer stops responding when loading a device driver or program other than EMM386, the program or device driver probably does not function correctly with MemMaker or in your computer's upper memory area.

► **To load your program or device driver properly**

1. When your computer stops responding, restart it by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. MemMaker automatically restarts.
2. Display the "Cancel and undo all changes" option by pressing the SPACEBAR twice, and then press ENTER.  
Your computer restarts with its original memory configuration.
3. Restart the MemMaker program by typing **memmaker** at the command prompt.  
When the Welcome screen appears, press ENTER.
4. When the second MemMaker screen appears, press the SPACEBAR to select "Custom Setup," and then press ENTER.
5. Continue with the MemMaker program until the Advanced Options screen appears. Press the SPACEBAR to change the "No" beside "Specify which drivers and TSRs to include during optimization?" to "Yes."
6. Press ENTER. If you use Windows, MemMaker might prompt you to provide more information. If it does, follow the instructions on your screen.
7. One by one, MemMaker prompts you to include device drivers and programs in the optimization process. Press ENTER each time you are prompted, *except* when you are prompted to include the device driver or program that caused your computer to stop responding. When you are prompted to include this device driver or program, press the SPACEBAR to select "No," and then press ENTER.

Follow the instructions on your screen.

8. MemMaker will restart your computer. If your computer stops responding when MemMaker tries to load a different program or device driver, repeat steps 1 through 7.

If your computer still stops responding when you run MemMaker, carry out the procedure in "You have tried the troubleshooting procedures, and your computer still stops responding when you run MemMaker" later in this chapter.

**Your computer stops responding again after the “MemMaker will now restart your computer to test the new memory configuration” screen appears.**

When your computer stops responding, note which program or device driver it is trying to load. This program or device driver probably does not run correctly in the upper memory area. You should run this program or device driver in conventional memory.

► **To load properly the program or device driver that causes your computer to stop responding**

1. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.  
MemMaker automatically restarts.
2. Choose the “Exit and undo changes” option by pressing the SPACEBAR, and then press ENTER.  
Your computer restarts with its original memory configuration.
3. Restart the MemMaker program by typing **memmaker** at the command prompt.
4. When the Welcome screen appears, press ENTER.
5. When the second MemMaker screen appears, press the SPACEBAR to select “Custom Setup,” and then press ENTER.
6. Continue with the MemMaker program until the Advanced Options screen appears. Press the SPACEBAR to change the “No” beside “Specify which drivers and TSRs to include during optimization?” to “Yes.”
7. Press ENTER. If you use Windows, MemMaker might prompt you to provide more information. If it does, follow the instructions on your screen.
8. One by one, MemMaker prompts you to include device drivers and programs in the optimization process. Press ENTER each time you are prompted, *except* when when you are prompted to include the device driver or program that caused your computer to stop responding. When you are prompted to include this device driver or program, press the SPACEBAR to select “No,” and then press ENTER.

Follow the instructions on your screen.

9. MemMaker will restart your computer. If your computer stops responding when MemMaker tries to load a different program or device driver, repeat steps 1 through 8.

If your computer still stops responding when you use MemMaker, carry out the procedure in the following section.

**You have tried the troubleshooting procedures, and your computer still stops responding when you run MemMaker.**

If you have tried the appropriate troubleshooting procedures described earlier in this chapter, but your computer still stops responding when you run MemMaker, carry out the following procedure.

► **To try additional troubleshooting techniques**

1. When your computer stops responding, restart it by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. MemMaker automatically restarts.
2. Select the “Cancel and undo all changes” option or the “Exit and undo changes” option, and then press ENTER.
3. When the MS-DOS command prompt appears, open your CONFIG.SYS file by typing the following:

**edit c:\config.sys**

Make sure your CONFIG.SYS file contains the command that loads EMM386.EXE. The command should look similar to the following:

```
DEVICE=C:\DOS\EMM386.EXE
```

If your CONFIG.SYS file does not contain the command that loads EMM386.EXE, insert it on a new line below the **device** command that loads HIMEM.SYS.

4. Press ALT, F, X to quit MS-DOS Editor. When a dialog box appears prompting you to save your changes, press Y.
5. Turn to the following sections in the chapter “Diagnosing and Solving Problems”:
  - “MS-DOS won’t start after you run Setup”  
Carry out the procedure titled “To determine whether the problem is in your CONFIG.SYS file.”
  - “You installed a hardware device, and your computer stopped working correctly”  
Carry out the procedure titled “To make sure EMM386 and another device driver or program don’t conflict.”

## There is not enough memory to continue MemMaker.

If you receive the “MemMaker cannot continue because there is not enough free conventional memory” message, carry out the following procedure.

► **To free enough conventional memory to run MemMaker**

1. When MemMaker displays the “MemMaker cannot continue because there is not enough free conventional memory” message, press ENTER to restart your computer.

2. After MemMaker restarts your computer, MS-DOS displays the following text:

Starting MS-DOS...

3. While the text is on your screen, press and release the F8 key. The following text appears:

MS-DOS will prompt you to confirm each CONFIG.SYS command.

As it processes the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file, MS-DOS displays each command, followed by a prompt. For example, when MS-DOS reaches the **dos=high** command, it displays the following prompt:

DOS=HIGH [Y,N]?

4. Bypass all the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file by pressing N each time you are prompted, *except* when you are prompted for the following commands:

HIMEM.SYS  
EMM386.EXE  
SHELL

The prompts will appear similar to the following:

DEVICE=C:\DOS\HIMEM.SYS [Y,N]?  
DEVICE=C:\DOS\EMM386.SYS [Y,N]?  
SHELL=C:\DOS\COMMAND.COM C:\DOS\ /P [Y,N]?

When prompts similar to these appear, press Y.

---

**Note** If MS-DOS prompts you for a command that loads a third-party device driver that starts a disk-compression program or provides access to your hard disk, press Y.

---

5. When MS-DOS finishes processing the commands in your CONFIG.SYS file, it displays the following prompt:

Process AUTOEXEC.BAT [Y,N]?

Press N to bypass the AUTOEXEC.BAT file.



6. When the MS-DOS command prompt appears, type the following:

**find /i "memmaker" autoexec.bat**

The **find** command should display a line similar to the following:

```
C:\DOS\MEMMAKER.EXE /SESSION:13396
```

7. At the command prompt, type the entire line exactly as **find** displays it.  
MemMaker should continue normally.
8. Follow the instructions on your screen.

### **After running MemMaker, a program or device driver that was loaded into the upper memory area does not work.**

If a program that MemMaker loaded into the upper memory area does not work after you run MemMaker, run the program or device driver in conventional memory instead.

#### **► To load properly the program or device driver that does not work correctly**

1. Restore your computer to the memory configuration it had before you ran MemMaker by typing the following at the command prompt:

**memmaker /undo**

2. When MemMaker starts, choose the "Restore files now" option by pressing ENTER.

MemMaker displays a screen confirming that it restored your original CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.

3. Restart your computer by pressing ENTER.
4. Restart MemMaker by typing the following at the command prompt:

**memmaker**

When the Welcome screen appears, press ENTER.

5. When the second MemMaker screen appears, press the SPACEBAR to select Custom Setup, and then press ENTER.
6. Continue with the MemMaker program until the Advanced Options screen appears. Press the SPACEBAR to change the "No" beside "Specify which drivers and TSRs to include during optimization?" to "Yes."
7. Press ENTER. If you use Windows, MemMaker might prompt you to provide more information. If it does, follow the instructions on your screen.

8. Press ENTER. One by one, MemMaker prompts you to include device drivers and programs in the optimization process. Press ENTER each time you are prompted, *except* when you are prompted to include the device driver or program that does not work correctly. When you are prompted to include this device driver or program, press the SPACEBAR to select “No,” and then press ENTER.

Follow the instructions on your screen.

## Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files

When you start your computer, it carries out the commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. Many of the commands in these files start device drivers and other memory-resident programs that use conventional memory. You can make more conventional memory available by disabling or removing unnecessary commands from these files. (To disable an unnecessary command, add a **rem** command to the beginning of that command. For more information, type **help rem** at the command prompt.)

---

**Note** Streamlining your startup files is especially important if you want MemMaker to provide you with an optimum memory configuration. Removing unnecessary memory-resident programs means you'll have more conventional memory to start with. You can also optimize your MemMaker configuration by fine-tuning the order of commands in your startup files. For more information, see “Freeing Additional Memory by Changing the Order of Commands in Your Startup Files” earlier in this chapter.

---

To effectively streamline your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, you should know the purpose of each of the commands in those files. For more information about the commands in these files, see the chapter “Configuring Your System” earlier in this guide.

---

**Caution** Be careful when changing your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. Your system may not function properly if you incorrectly change some values or disable some commands. If your computer fails to start after you change these files, follow the instructions in “Bypassing CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Commands” in the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

---

The following basic recommendations can help you conserve conventional memory by streamlining your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files:

- Whenever possible, load programs that require extra memory during startup before those that do not. Some programs or device drivers require more memory when they start than they do afterward. For more information, see “Fine-Tuning Your Memory Configuration” earlier in this chapter.

- If your computer has expanded memory, your CONFIG.SYS file should include a **device** command for the expanded-memory manager that came with your memory board. For more information, see the documentation that came with your expanded-memory board.
- If your computer has extended memory, your CONFIG.SYS file should include the **dos=high** command as well as a **device** command for the HIMEM.SYS extended-memory manager. The **dos=high** command saves conventional memory by running MS-DOS in the high memory area. For more information about the **dos** command, type **help dos** at the command prompt. For more information about HIMEM.SYS, type **help himem.sys** at the command prompt.
- If your computer has extended memory, disable any commands in your CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT files that start the Fastopen program. (To speed up a computer that has extended memory, use SMARTDrive instead of Fastopen.) If your computer has only expanded memory and you find that Fastopen noticeably improves your computer's speed, load Fastopen in expanded memory by using the **/x** switch. For more information about Fastopen, type **help fastopen** at the command prompt.
- Disable any **append /e** or **append c:\dos** commands in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. These commands are not necessary with this version of MS-DOS.
- If your CONFIG.SYS file contains a command that loads the double-buffering feature of SMARTDrive, you might be able to disable this command. To find out whether you need to use double buffering, type **help smartdrv** at the command prompt and choose <double-buffering> in the second paragraph. Then, follow the procedure in the section "Determining whether you need to use double buffering."

---

**Note** If you ran MemMaker before streamlining your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, run it again after changing the files so that MemMaker can optimize your system's memory for the new configuration. For more information about MemMaker, see "Optimizing Memory with MemMaker" earlier in this chapter.

---

For more information about your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, see the chapter "Configuring Your System."

## Running MS-DOS in the High Memory Area

By default, MS-DOS runs in conventional memory, which makes less conventional memory available to other programs. However, if your computer has extended memory, portions of MS-DOS can run in the high memory area (HMA).

Because few programs use the HMA, it makes sense to run MS-DOS there. To run MS-DOS in the HMA, you need a computer with an 80286, 80386, or 80486 processor and extended memory.

---

**Note** If your computer has extended memory, the MS-DOS Setup program adds the required commands to your CONFIG.SYS file so that MS-DOS runs in the HMA.

---

To determine whether MS-DOS is running in the HMA, type **mem** at the command prompt. If MS-DOS displays the line “MS-DOS is resident in the high memory area,” it is running in the HMA.

If MS-DOS is not running in the HMA, you can add commands to your CONFIG.SYS file that load the HIMEM.SYS extended memory-manager and load MS-DOS into the HMA. The commands you add should appear similar to the following:

```
device=c:\dos\himem.sys
dos=high
```

The **device=c:\dos\himem.sys** command in this example loads the HIMEM.SYS extended-memory manager from the C:\DOS directory; the **dos=high** command loads most of MS-DOS into extended memory. For more information about editing your CONFIG.SYS file, see “Editing Your CONFIG.SYS File” in the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

## Freeing Extended Memory

Some programs require extended memory to run. If you are having trouble running such a program, use the **mem** command to determine how much extended memory is available and how much is currently being used.

If **mem** reports that the total amount of extended memory is 0, make sure your system is set up to provide extended memory. To use extended memory, your computer must have as much physical extended memory as the program needs, and your CONFIG.SYS file must contain a **device** command for the HIMEM.SYS extended-memory manager or another memory manager that conforms to the Lotus/Intel/Microsoft/AST eXtended Memory Specification (XMS). Most programs need an extended-memory manager in order to use extended memory. For more information about HIMEM.SYS, type **help himem.sys** at the command prompt.



If you have extended memory but it is all being used, try the following:

- If your CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file starts programs that use extended memory, reduce the amount of extended memory you allocate for each program. For information about how to do this, see the documentation that accompanied each program.
- If your CONFIG.SYS file contains an EMM386.EXE command line that does not include the **noems** switch, add the **min=0** switch to the command line.  
When EMM386 starts without the **noems** switch, it normally reserves some extended memory for use as simulated expanded memory. The **min=0** switch directs EMM386 not to set aside any extended memory, but still allows EMM386 to provide expanded memory to applications that request it. For more information, type **help emm386.exe** at the command prompt.
- If you are using RAMDrive and creating a RAM disk in extended memory, use SMARTDrive instead. On most computers, SMARTDrive improves speed more effectively than RAMDrive. To disable RAMDrive, add a **rem** command to the beginning of the RAMDrive command line in your CONFIG.SYS file. To add SMARTDrive, add the **smartdrv** command to the end of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For more information about SMARTDrive, type **help smartdrv** at the command prompt.
- If you are conserving conventional memory by running programs in upper memory, try running them in conventional memory instead. Although running programs in upper memory conserves conventional memory, it uses some extended memory. (EMM386 creates UMBs using extended memory.)  
The simplest way to stop running programs in upper memory is to add a **rem** command to the beginning of the EMM386.EXE command line in your CONFIG.SYS file.
- If Windows won't start because not enough extended memory is available, try disabling the EMM386.EXE command line and the **dos=high** command in your CONFIG.SYS file. Although these commands enable you to conserve conventional memory, they use some extended memory.

## Freeing Expanded Memory

Some programs require additional expanded memory to run. If you are having trouble running such a program, do the following:

- Make sure your system contains as much physical expanded memory as the program needs, and that your CONFIG.SYS file contains a **device** command for the expanded-memory manager that came with your memory board.

If you have an 80386 computer with extended memory, you can use EMM386 to provide expanded memory for programs. For information about EMM386, see the section “Using the EMM386 Memory Manager” later in this chapter.

- If you are using EMM386 with the **noems** switch, expanded memory will be unavailable. On the EMM386.EXE command line in your CONFIG.SYS file, change the **noems** switch to the **ram** switch. For information about EMM386.EXE, type **help emm386.exe** at the command prompt.
- If your CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file starts programs that use expanded memory, reduce the amount of expanded memory you allocate for each program. For information about how to do this, see the documentation that accompanied each program.

## Using MS-DOS Memory Managers

To use your computer's extended memory, expanded memory, or upper memory area, your CONFIG.SYS file must contain a command that loads a *memory manager*. A memory manager is a device driver that provides access to a particular type of memory. (You do not need a memory manager to use conventional memory, because MS-DOS has a built-in conventional-memory manager.)

MS-DOS includes the following memory managers:

- HIMEM, which provides access to extended memory. MS-DOS Setup installs HIMEM automatically if you have an 80286, 80386, or 80486 computer with extended memory. For more information about HIMEM, type **help himem.sys** at the command prompt.
- EMM386, which provides access to the upper memory area. EMM386 can also use extended memory to simulate expanded memory. For more information, see the following section.

MS-DOS does not include an expanded-memory manager for physical expanded memory, since each expanded-memory board requires its own memory manager. To use physical expanded memory, you must install the memory manager that came with your expanded-memory board.

---

**Note** MS-DOS also includes the SMARTDrive and RAMDrive programs. These are not memory managers; they are optimization programs that use some memory to speed up your system. For information about SMARTDrive or RAMDrive, type **help smartdrv** or **help ramdrive.sys** at the command prompt.

---

## Using the EMM386 Memory Manager

EMM386, which comes with MS-DOS, is a dual-purpose memory manager for 80386 and 80486 computers that have extended memory. EMM386 performs two functions:

- It provides access to the upper memory area. This enables you to free conventional memory by running device drivers and memory-resident programs in upper memory.
- It uses extended memory to simulate expanded memory. Programs can then use that simulated expanded memory as if it were physical expanded memory.

EMM386 can perform either or both of these functions. In general, if you have an 80386 or 80486 computer with extended memory, you should be using EMM386 to provide access to upper memory. If you have programs that need expanded memory, you should also use EMM386 to emulate expanded memory.

The easiest way to install EMM386 is to run the MemMaker program, which installs and configures EMM386.

### ► To install EMM386

1. Run the MemMaker program by typing **memmaker** at the command prompt. MemMaker displays the Welcome screen.
2. Choose the Continue option by pressing ENTER. MemMaker displays a screen prompting you to choose between Express and Custom Setup.
3. Choose Express Setup by pressing ENTER. MemMaker displays a screen that prompts you to specify whether you use any programs that require expanded memory.
4. If none of your programs require expanded memory, or if you are not sure whether your programs require expanded memory, choose No by pressing ENTER.  
  
If you use programs that require expanded memory, select Yes by pressing the SPACEBAR, and then press ENTER. For more information about this screen, press F1.
5. Complete the MemMaker program by following the instructions on your screen. For more information about MemMaker, see the section “Optimizing Memory by Using MemMaker” earlier in this chapter.

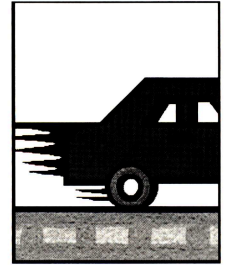
For more information, type **help emm386.exe** at the command prompt.





## CHAPTER 7

# Features for Your Laptop Computer



With the Interlnk program and a cable that connects two computers, you can use one computer to access data and run programs on another computer. You no longer have to use floppy disks to copy files from one computer to another.

For example, suppose you regularly visit your field sales force and record information you gather on a laptop computer. When you return to your home office, you transfer the information to your desktop computer, which is connected to a printer. Using Interlnk, you can add the information you've gathered to a database on your desktop computer and print out the new information.

After you connect your computers and start Interlnk, you use the laptop computer to type commands that control both it and your desktop computer. The desktop computer displays the status of the connection; you use its keyboard only to break the connection between the two computers.

## Using Interlnk to Connect Two Computers

The computer you use to type commands is called the *client*. Generally, this is your laptop computer. The computer connected to the client is the *server*. Generally, this is your desktop computer. The client uses the server's drives and printers, and the server displays the status of the connection between the computers.

For example, suppose you have connected a laptop and a desktop computer. The laptop computer has three drives: a floppy disk drive (A) and two hard disk drives (C and D). The desktop computer also has three drives: two floppy disk drives

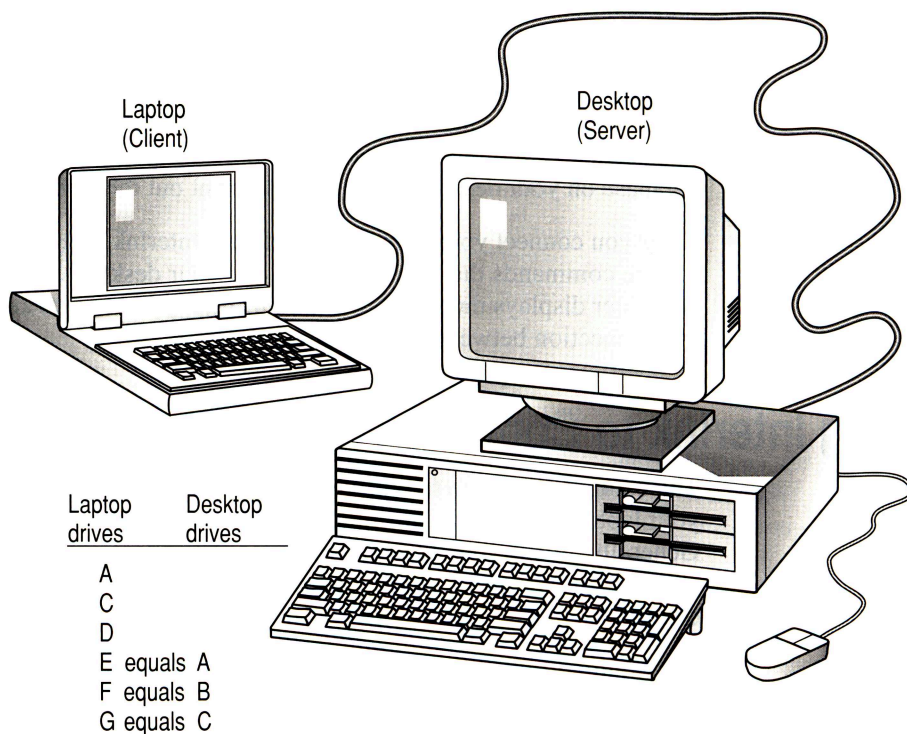
(A and B) and a hard disk drive (C). The following table lists the drives on each computer.

Laptop drives	Desktop drives
---------------	----------------

A	A
C	B
D	C

When the computers are connected using InterLink, the drives on the desktop computer (the server) appear as additional drives on the laptop computer (the client). In addition to drives A, C, and D, the laptop computer now includes drives E, F, and G.

The following illustration shows how the drives of each computer are redirected.



Drive E of the laptop computer (client) represents drive A of the desktop computer (server). If you make drive E current on the laptop computer, the commands you type affect drive A of the desktop computer. For example, if you type the following command on the laptop computer, MS-DOS displays a list of the files in the root directory of the desktop computer's hard drive:

**dir g:\**

The drives on your laptop and desktop computers will probably be redirected differently than the ones in this example. When you connect your computers and get Interlnk running, the server will display the way your drives are redirected.

## What You Need to Use Interlnk

Before you use Interlnk, make sure you have the following hardware, software, and available memory:

- A free serial port on both computers or a free parallel port on both computers
- A 3-wire serial cable, 7-wire null-modem serial cable, or bidirectional parallel cable
- MS-DOS version 6.0 or later on one computer and MS-DOS version 3.0 or later on the other
- 16 kilobytes (K) of free memory on the client and 130K of free memory on the server

## Setting Up the Client

### ► To set up INTERLNK.EXE on the computer(s) you plan to use as a client

1. Make sure the INTERLNK.EXE file is located on the computer's hard disk.

If the client's hard disk does not contain the INTERLNK.EXE file, see "Using the Remote Copy Procedure" later in this chapter for instructions on copying Interlnk files from one computer to another.

2. Open your CONFIG.SYS file by using a text editor such as MS-DOS Editor. (Your CONFIG.SYS file is located in the root directory of your startup disk.)

To open your CONFIG.SYS file using MS-DOS Editor, type the following at the command prompt:

**edit c:\config.sys**

3. Add a **device** command that specifies the location of the INTERLNK.EXE file. You can also specify options for redirecting drives and printers. For more information about the options you can specify, type **help interlnk.exe** at the command prompt.

The following example specifies that the INTERLNK.EXE file is located in the DOS directory on drive C. The command also specifies that INTERLNK.EXE should redirect five drives instead of the default three drives:

**device=c:\dos\interlnk.exe /drives:5**

4. Save the changes to your CONFIG.SYS file, and then quit the text editor.
5. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

After you add the **device** command for INTERLNK.EXE to your CONFIG.SYS file, Interlnk displays the status of redirected drives and ports each time you start the client computer. You can also view the status of redirected drives and ports by typing **interlnk** at the command prompt.

For example, the following is a status report for a computer that has five redirected drives and two redirected printer ports:

```
Microsoft Interlnk version 1.00
```

```
Port=LPT1
```

```
Drive letters redirected: 5 (D: through H:)
```

```
Printer ports redirected: 2 (LPT1: through LPT2:)
```

This Computer (Client)		Other Computer (Server)
-----		-----
D:	equals	A:
E:	equals	B:
F:	equals	C:(85Mb) MS-DOS_6
G:	equals	D:
H:	equals	E:
LPT1:	equals	LPT2:
LPT2:	equals	LPT3:

The Port line indicates which port Interlnk is using to connect to the other computer. Interlnk displays the sizes and volume labels of hard disk drives on the server. For example, drive C on the server is 85 megabytes (MB) and is labeled “MS-DOS\_6.”

For more information about the INTERLNK.EXE device driver, type **help interlnk.exe** at the command prompt.

## Starting the Server

You do not need to make any changes to your CONFIG.SYS file to start the Interlnk server. To start the server, type **intersvr** at the command prompt of the computer you are using as the server. Interlnk displays information about redirected drives and printer ports on the server's screen.

The column labeled “This Computer” lists all drives and printer ports on the server. The column labeled “Other Computer” lists the drives and printer ports on the client, in addition to the drives and ports on the server that are now available on the client.



A status bar at the bottom of the screen displays the status of the Interlnk connection. The Transfer field indicates whether the client is reading from or writing to the server. When the client reads from or writes to the server, Interlnk displays an asterisk (\*) next to the drive letter that indicates which server drive is being affected. The Port field shows which server port Interlnk is using to connect to the client. The Speed field shows the baud rate at which Interlnk is transferring information.

---

**Note** You cannot switch between tasks in Microsoft Windows or MS-DOS Shell while Interlnk is running.

---

For more information about the Interlnk server, type **help intersvr** at the command prompt.

## Establishing a Connection Between Computers

Interlnk establishes connections between all redirected drives and ports when you do one of the following:

- Restart the client computer when the server is running.
- Type **interlnk** at the command prompt of the client computer.
- Make one of the redirected drives on the client computer the active drive.

## Breaking the Connection Between Computers

To break the Interlnk connection between computers, stop the server by pressing ALT+F4 on the server's keyboard. To restart the server, type **intersvr** at the server's command prompt.

## Using the Remote Copy Procedure

If only one of the two computers you want to connect has the Interlnk files on it, you can use the Interlnk copy procedure instead of a floppy disk to copy the files to the other computer.

---

**Note** To carry out the remote copy procedure, you must connect the serial ports of the two computers with a 7-wire null-modem serial cable. You must also have access to the **mode** command on the computer that you are copying Interlnk files to. If you do not have a 7-wire null-modem cable, use a floppy disk to transfer files.

---

► **To copy Interlnk files from one computer to another**

1. Make the directory to which you want to copy files the current directory.
2. If you are using a port other than COM1 on the computer you are copying files to, make sure that you are not running the Share program on that computer. If you are, disable the **share** command in your AUTOEXEC.BAT or CONFIG.SYS file, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
3. At the command prompt of the computer that has the Interlnk files on it, type the following:

**intersvr /rcopy**

The remote installation screen appears.

Follow the instructions that appear on your screen.

As Interlnk copies the files, it displays the status at the bottom of each computer's screen.

## Conserving Power on Your Laptop Computer

The Power program conserves battery power on your laptop computer when applications and hardware devices are idle. If your hardware conforms to the Advanced Power Management (APM) specification, your power savings can be up to 25 percent, depending on your hardware. If your hardware does not conform to the APM specification, your power savings will be about 5 percent.

► **To use the Power program**

1. Open your CONFIG.SYS file by using a text editor such as MS-DOS Editor. (Your CONFIG.SYS file is usually located in the root directory of your startup disk.)

To open your CONFIG.SYS file using MS-DOS Editor, type the following at the command prompt:

**edit c:\config.sys**

2. At the end of your CONFIG.SYS file, add a **device** command that specifies the location of the POWER.EXE file.

The following example specifies that the POWER.EXE file is located in the DOS directory on drive C, and that the default setting should be used:

**device=c:\dos\power.exe**

3. Save the changes to your CONFIG.SYS file, and then quit the text editor.
4. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.

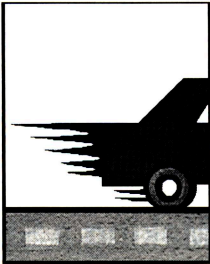
To display the current power setting, type the following at the command prompt:

**power**

For more information about the POWER.EXE device driver, type **help power.exe** at the command prompt. For more information about the **power** command, type **help power** at the command prompt.







# Diagnosing and Solving Problems

This chapter is divided into three sections: “Troubleshooting During Setup,” “Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk,” and “Troubleshooting While Running MS-DOS.”

“Troubleshooting During Setup” explains how to finish installing MS-DOS if you encounter a problem during Setup. “Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk” explains how to repartition your hard disk. “Troubleshooting While Running MS-DOS” explains how to solve the most common problems you might encounter while using MS-DOS.

If you encounter a problem with one of the programs included with MS-DOS, consult the following table to find the troubleshooting help you need.

For problems with	See this chapter
Anti-Virus	“Managing Your System”
Backup	“Managing Your System”
MemMaker	“Making More Memory Available”
Undelete	“Managing Your System”

If you do not find the troubleshooting information you need in this guide, view the README.TXT file on Setup Disk 1 by using any text editor.

## Troubleshooting During Setup

This section explains how to solve the most common problems you might encounter while setting up MS-DOS. Before you carry out any of the procedures in this section, make a startup disk. For instructions, see the following section.

### Making a Startup Disk

A startup disk is a floppy disk you can use to start your computer while you are troubleshooting or reconfiguring your computer.

---

**Note** By carrying out the following procedure, you will create a startup disk that contains the files needed to start your computer, in addition to commands and programs that you might need. However, in an emergency, you can also use Setup Disk 1 or your Uninstall disk to start your computer.

---

Before you carry out this procedure, prepare a formatted or unformatted floppy disk that is compatible with drive A by labeling it "Startup."

► **To make a startup disk**

1. Quit Setup if you have not already done so.
2. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B.

If your Setup disks are compatible with drive B, place Setup Disk 1 in drive B. This will speed up the process of creating a startup disk.

3. Type the following at the command prompt:

**a:setup /f**

or

**b:setup /f**

4. Follow the instructions on your screen.

### Using the Uninstall Disk

The primary purpose of the Uninstall disk is to safeguard the files on your computer while you are installing MS-DOS. The Uninstall disk protects the files on your computer if Setup cannot finish installing MS-DOS or if you encounter problems with MS-DOS after Setup is complete. By using the Uninstall disk, you can restore your previous version of DOS if you need to.

The first time you set up MS-DOS, the Setup program creates a directory named OLD\_DOS.1 on your hard disk. Setup copies your previous DOS files to this directory. Setup then copies information about your previous version of DOS,

your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, and your CONFIG.SYS file to the Uninstall disk. Setup gives the copies of your AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files the extension .DAT.

If you decide to restore your previous version of DOS, use the Uninstall program. This program copies the files in the OLD\_DOS.1 directory back to their original location.

If you run Setup again, it creates an OLD\_DOS directory with a new numeric extension. For example, the second time you run Setup, it creates the OLD\_DOS.2 directory.

You cannot use the Uninstall disk to restore your previous version of DOS if you do any of the following after installing MS-DOS:

- Repartition or reformat your hard disk
- Delete or move either of the two hidden MS-DOS system files (IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS)
- Delete the OLD\_DOS.x directory
- Install a third-party disk-compression program

---

**Note** If your startup drive uses a third-party disk-compression program, you might not be able to create an Uninstall disk during Setup or restore your previous version of DOS during or after Setup. To protect your data files, back them up before you run Setup. You should also create a startup disk that includes the system files of your previous version of DOS and then copy the **fdisk**, **format**, and **sys** commands to the disk. For more information about creating a startup disk, see the documentation that came with your previous version of DOS.

---

► **To restore your previous version of DOS**

1. Insert the Uninstall disk in drive A.
2. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
3. Follow the instructions on your screen.

You can also use the Uninstall disk to start MS-DOS without restoring your previous version of DOS.

► **To start your computer by using the Uninstall disk**

1. Insert the Uninstall disk in drive A.
2. Restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
3. When Uninstall information appears on your screen, press F3 twice to quit the Uninstall program.

The MS-DOS command prompt appears. Drive A will be your current drive, and your computer will start with a basic configuration instead of your usual configuration. For more information, see the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

## Setup stops before MS-DOS has been completely installed.

This section explains what to do if Setup stops or is interrupted before it finishes installing MS-DOS.

To determine which procedure to use, try to restart your computer by removing disks from all floppy disk drives, and then pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. If MS-DOS does not prompt you for an Uninstall disk, carry out Procedure 1. If MS-DOS prompts you for an Uninstall disk, carry out Procedure 2.

### ► Procedure 1 To complete setup if MS-DOS did not prompt you for an Uninstall disk

1. Remove disks from all floppy disk drives, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
2. To make sure you can access your hard disk, type the following at the command prompt:

**dir c:\**

You should see a list of files and directories.

3. Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir c:\directory**

For *directory*, type the name of any directory on drive C. You should see a list of the files and subdirectories in the directory you specified.

If you see lists of files and directories when you carry out steps 2 and 3, proceed to step 4.

If you do not see a list of files and directories, you probably cannot access your hard disk. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services. For information about how to reach Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

4. Create a startup disk by inserting a floppy disk in drive A, and then typing the following at the command prompt:

**format a: /s**

The **format** command formats the floppy disk and transfers system files to it.

5. Leave the disk you made in step 4 in drive A, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
6. To make sure you can access your hard disk, type the following at the command prompt:



**dir c:\**

You should see a list of files and directories.

7. Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir c:\directory**

For *directory*, type the name of any directory on drive C. You should see a list of the files and subdirectories in the directory you specified.

If you see lists of files and directories when you carry out steps 6 and 7, proceed to step 8.

If you do not see a list of files and directories, you probably cannot access your hard disk. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services. For information about how to reach Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

8. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B, and then type the following at the command prompt:

**a:setup**

or

**b:setup**

If Setup stops again, insert the startup disk you made in drive A, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL. Proceed to step 9.

If you receive a message about an incompatible partition, contact Microsoft Product Support Services. Do not use the **setup /u** command. For information about how to reach Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

9. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B, and then restart Setup by typing the following at the command prompt:

**a:setup /i**

or

**b:setup /i**

The **/i** switch causes Setup to skip hardware detection. When Setup prompts you to provide information about your computer system, choose settings that match the hardware you are using.

If MS-DOS prompts you for an Uninstall disk after you restart your computer, carry out the following procedure.

► **Procedure 2 To complete installation if MS-DOS prompted you for an Uninstall disk**

1. Insert the Uninstall disk in drive A, and then press ENTER.
2. Follow the instructions on your screen.

If Setup stops again, call Microsoft Product Support Services. For information about how to reach Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

## Setup screens are unreadable.

This section explains what to do if your monitor cannot display Setup screens properly. If your computer's operating system is DOS, carry out the following procedure.

If your computer's only operating system is OS/2, contact your hardware vendor for information about setting up MS-DOS.

► **To set up MS-DOS if your computer's current operating system is a previous version of DOS**

1. Quit Setup if you have not already done so.

To quit Setup, press F3 twice.

2. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B, and then type the following at the command prompt:

**a:setup /i**

or

**b:setup /i**

The /i switch causes Setup to skip automatic hardware detection. When Setup prompts you for the type of monitor you are using, make sure you specify the correct type.

## Setup displays the “There is not enough free space on drive C to install MS-DOS” screen.

If you receive a message during Setup stating that you don't have enough space to install MS-DOS, you can make room on your hard disk by carrying out one of the procedures in this section.

If you have a version of DOS on your computer, carry out Procedure 1. If you have only OS/2 on your computer, carry out Procedure 2.

► **Procedure 1 To determine how much disk space you need to free if you have DOS on your computer**

1. Setup indicates which drive needs more free space. Note how much disk space you need to free.
2. Quit Setup by pressing F3 twice.

3. Type the following at the command prompt:

**chkdsk c:**

The first line shown by **chkdsk** should look similar to the following:

```
61739008 bytes total disk space
```

This number represents the total capacity of the drive. If the capacity of drive C is smaller than the number indicated on the Setup screen, repartition your hard disk. For instructions, see “Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk” later in this chapter.

4. The **chkdsk** command should also show a line similar to the following:

```
32672128 bytes available on disk
```

This number represents the free space available on the drive. If drive C is large enough but you don’t have enough free disk space to set up MS-DOS, delete unnecessary files or move them to another disk drive until you have enough free disk space. You might want to back up any files you plan to delete.

If your drive doesn’t have enough disk space to set up MS-DOS because you chose to keep OS/2, see “Removing OS/2 and Saving the Data on Your Computer” in “If You Have OS/2 Dual Boot with DOS or OS/2 Boot Manager with DOS” in the chapter “Getting Started.”

5. Run Setup again.

---

**Note** If your computer uses a third-party disk-compression program, the **chkdsk** command might not accurately estimate the amount of free disk space on your computer. However, regardless of what **chkdsk** reports, Setup correctly detects the amount of free disk space it needs. If Setup again indicates that you don’t have enough free disk space to set up MS-DOS, quit Setup, free more disk space, and then run Setup again.

---

► **Procedure 2 To determine how much disk space you need to free if you have only OS/2 on your computer**

1. Before quitting Setup, note how much disk space needs to be free on drive C. Then quit Setup by pressing F3 twice.
2. Type the following at the command prompt:  
**dir c:\s**

This command lists all the files and directories on drive C. At the bottom of the list, you should see lines similar to the following:

```
64 file(s)  53608448 bytes
           2488383 bytes free
```

Delete unnecessary files or move them to another disk drive until you have enough free disk space. You might want to back up any files you plan to delete.

If you don't have enough disk space because you chose to keep OS/2, see "Upgrading from OS/2 to MS-DOS" in the chapter "Getting Started."

3. Run Setup again.

## Setup displays the "Your computer uses a disk-compression program" screen.

If your startup drive uses a third-party disk-compression program, you will not be able to create an Uninstall disk during Setup or restore your previous version of DOS during or after Setup. For that reason, you might want to protect your data files by backing them up before you run Setup. In addition, you might want to create a startup disk that includes the system files of your previous version of DOS, and then copy the **fdisk**, **sys**, and **format** commands to the disk. For more information about the Uninstall feature, see "Using the Uninstall Disk" earlier in this chapter. For information about creating a startup disk, see the documentation that came with your previous version of DOS.

## Setup displays the "Your computer uses a disk-compression program and does not have enough free disk space to set up MS-DOS" screen.

When Setup displays this screen, it indicates which drive does not have enough disk space. The drive Setup indicates is your uncompressed drive.

### ► To free enough disk space to set up MS-DOS

1. Note how much disk space you need to free.
2. Quit Setup by pressing F3 twice.



3. Type the following at the command prompt:

**chkdsk** *drive*:

For *drive*, type the drive letter of your uncompressed drive.

A screen of information appears. It should include a line similar to the following:

500128 bytes available on disk

Delete unnecessary files or move them to another drive until you have enough free disk space. You might want to back up any files you plan to delete.

---

**Important** Do not delete your COMMAND.COM, AUTOEXEC.BAT, or CONFIG.SYS files, or any files used by your disk-compression program. If you cannot delete enough unnecessary files, see your disk-compression documentation for instructions on how to enlarge the capacity of your uncompressed drive, or contact the vendor of your disk-compression software.

---

4. When you have freed enough disk space, run Setup again.

## Setup displays the “Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” screen.

If Setup displays this screen, you need to run the ADD2SWP program to make your computer’s uncompressed drive accessible to Setup. If your SuperStor™ installation disks contain the ADD2SWP.EXE file, carry out the following procedure. If your disks do not contain the file, contact AddStor, Inc. for information about how to obtain it.

► **To make your computer’s uncompressed drive accessible to Setup**

1. Insert the SuperStor disk with the ADD2SWP.EXE file in drive A or B.
2. Type the following at the command prompt:

**a:add2swp** *drive*:

or

**b:add2swp** *drive*:

For *drive*, type the letter of your hard disk’s startup drive. Typically, this is drive C.

3. Follow the instructions on your screen.
4. After you restart your computer, run Setup again.

## Setup displays the “Your computer uses a disk-compression program and has run out of disk space” screen.

If Setup displays this message, carry out the following procedure. If Setup displays this message and also indicates that you will not be able to restart your computer, contact Microsoft Product Support Services. For information about how to contact Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

► **To free enough disk space to set up MS-DOS**

1. Setup indicates which drive needs more free disk space. Note how much disk space you need to free.
2. Quit Setup by pressing F3 twice.
3. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B, and then type the following at the command prompt:

**a:\chkdsk** *drive*:

or

**b:\chkdsk** *drive*:

For *drive*, type the letter of the drive on which Setup indicated that you need to free disk space.

A screen of information appears. It should include a line similar to the following:

```
500128 bytes available on disk
```

4. Delete unnecessary files or move them to another drive until you have enough free disk space. You might want to back up any files you plan to delete.
5. When you have freed enough disk space, run Setup again.

---

**Note** Because your computer uses a third-party disk-compression program, the **chkdsk** command might not accurately estimate the amount of free disk space on your computer. However, regardless of what the **chkdsk** command reports, Setup correctly detects the amount of free disk space it needs. If Setup again indicates that you don't have enough free disk space to set up MS-DOS, quit Setup, free more disk space, and then run Setup again.

---

## Setup displays the “Your computer uses password protection” screen.

If your computer is using a password protection program, you must quit Setup and disable the password program before you can install MS-DOS. When you have disabled the password program, restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL, and then run Setup again. For more information, see the documentation that came with your password protection program.

## Setup displays the “Your computer is using an incompatible delete-protection program” screen.

If Setup displays this screen and your computer is using the DELWATCH program, carry out the following procedure.

---

**Note** To determine if your computer has been using DELWATCH and has been creating pending delete files, use the **chkdsk** command. For information about the **chkdsk** command, see the documentation that came with your previous version of DOS.

Even if you run DELWATCH from a floppy disk, you need to run the program DELPURGE as described in step 4 below.

---

### ► To disable the DELWATCH program

1. Open your AUTOEXEC.BAT file by using a text editor.
2. Remove the command that loads DELWATCH, and then save the file.  
For information about which command loads DELWATCH, see the documentation that came with your previous version of DOS.
3. Remove disks from all floppy disk drives, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
4. Remove disks from all floppy disk drives, and then run the DELPURGE program to purge your hard disk of pending delete files.  
For information about the DELPURGE program, see the documentation that came with your previous version of DOS.
5. Run Setup again.

## **Setup displays the “Cannot find a hard disk on your computer” screen.**

Setup displays this screen when your computer:

- Has a hard disk that is incompatible with Setup or is supported by a device driver.
- Has a hard disk that isn't functioning properly.

For information about how to set up MS-DOS on your computer, contact Microsoft Product Support Services. For information about how to reach Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

## **Setup displays the “Too Many Primary Partitions” or “Incompatible Primary DOS Partition” screen.**

If Setup displays one of these messages, you probably need to repartition your hard disk before you can install MS-DOS. For information about repartitioning your hard disk, see “Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk” later in this chapter.

## **Setup displays the “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” screen.**

This section explains how to set up MS-DOS if your computer has one of the following:

- Priam® or Everex™ partition
- Syquest® removable hard disk
- Vfeature™ Deluxe partition
- Novell® partition
- UNIX® or XENIX® partition
- Bernoulli™ drive
- Disk Manager® partition

If Setup displays the “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” screen and your computer does not include a component from the preceding list, you might have an incompatible partition that you need to delete from your hard disk. To delete the partition, follow the instructions in “Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk” later in this chapter.



## Priam or Everex Partitions

If you used Priam or Everex disk-partitioning software to partition your hard disk, you cannot use the Setup program to install MS-DOS. For information about installing MS-DOS manually (without using the Setup program), see “You need to install MS-DOS manually” later in this chapter.

## Syquest Removable Hard Disk

If your computer contains a Syquest removable hard disk, disable the **device=syq55.sys** command line in your CONFIG.SYS file by using the **rem** command. Then run Setup again. After MS-DOS is set up, re-enable the command line by removing the **rem** command.

## Novell Partitions

If your hard disk includes Novell partitions, quit Setup, and then restart Setup by typing **a:setup /u** (or **b:setup /u**) at the command prompt. The **/u** switch enables Setup to install MS-DOS even if Setup detects partitions that might be incompatible.

## Vfeature Deluxe Partitions

Contact Golden Bow Systems for information about Vfeature upgrades. Or delete Vfeature partitions by repartitioning your hard disk using the Fdisk program. To repartition your hard disk, follow the instructions in “Using Fdisk to Configure Your Hard Disk” later in this chapter.

## UNIX or XENIX Partitions

If your hard disk has UNIX or XENIX partitions in addition to standard DOS partitions and you receive a message stating that a partition is incompatible with MS-DOS, quit Setup, and then type **a:setup /u** (or **b:setup /u**) at the command prompt. The **/u** switch enables Setup to install MS-DOS even if Setup detects partitions that might be incompatible.

---

**Important** If your computer’s operating systems include UNIX or XENIX and a screen from which you choose an operating system appears when you start your computer, do not run Setup; you need to install MS-DOS manually (without using the Setup program). For information about manually installing MS-DOS, see “You need to install MS-DOS manually” later in this chapter.

---

## Disk Caching with a Bernoulli Drive

If your computer uses disk caching with an Iomega Bernoulli drive, use the **rem** command to disable the command lines that install the caching software for your Bernoulli drive. Then run Setup again. After MS-DOS is set up, re-enable the command lines by removing the **rem** commands.

## Disk Manager Partitions and Drivers

If you are using MS-DOS version 3.x on a computer that has a Disk Manager partition larger than 512 MB, contact Ontrack Computer Systems to get an updated version of Disk Manager and instructions for making the partition compatible with MS-DOS.

If you have MS-DOS version 4.x or later on your computer, Setup could not find the command line in your CONFIG.SYS file for the device driver that supports your Disk Manager partition. Add the **device** command line to your CONFIG.SYS file, restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL, and then run Setup again. For more information about adding the command line to your CONFIG.SYS file, see your Disk Manager documentation.

## Setup displays the “Incompatible partition” screen.

If you have a SpeedStor Bootall partition, you cannot use the Setup program to install MS-DOS. For information about installing MS-DOS manually (without using the Setup program), see “You need to install MS-DOS manually” later in this chapter.

## Setup repeatedly prompts you for the Uninstall disk.

If Setup displays the following message when you insert the Uninstall disk in drive A, make sure you are using an unformatted disk:

```
ERROR
This is not the correct disk.
Press ENTER to continue.
```

If using an unformatted disk does not work, carry out the following procedure.

- ▶ **To prevent Setup from repeatedly prompting you for the Uninstall disk**
  1. Quit Setup if you have not already done so. To quit Setup, press F3 twice.
  2. Create a startup disk.

To do this, insert a floppy disk in drive A, and type the following at the command prompt:

```
format a: /s
```

The **format /s** command formats the floppy disk and transfers your system files to it.

3. Type the following command lines, substituting a value for *x* that is listed in the table following this procedure. At the end of each line, press ENTER.

```
copy con a:config.sys  
drivparm /d:0 /f:x
```

These commands create a CONFIG.SYS file on the disk in drive A. The file will contain the **drivparm** command, which modifies the parameters of drive A.

4. To save the CONFIG.SYS file you just created, press F6, and then press ENTER.
5. Leave the disk in drive A, and then restart your computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
6. To make sure you can access your hard disk, type the following at the command prompt:

```
dir c:\
```

You should see a list of files and directories.

7. Type the following at the command prompt:

```
dir c:\directory
```

For *directory*, type the name of any directory on drive C. You should see a list of files and subdirectories in the directory you specified.

If you see lists of files and directories when you carry out steps 6 and 7, proceed to step 8.

If you do not see a list of files and directories, you probably cannot access your hard disk. Call Microsoft Product Support Services. For information about how to reach Microsoft Product Support Services, see the “Welcome” section at the beginning of this guide.

8. Insert Setup Disk 1 in drive A or B.
9. Type the following at the command prompt:

```
a:setup
```

or

```
b:setup
```

Follow the instructions on your screen.

The value you specify for *x* in step 3 depends on the size and capacity of drive A. The following table describes valid values for *x*.

Disk size	Disk capacity	Value to use
5.25 inches	160K, 180K, 320K, 360K	<b>0</b>
5.25 inches	1.2 MB	<b>1</b>
3.5 inches	720K	<b>2</b>
3.5 inches	1.44 MB	<b>7</b>
3.5 inches	2.88 MB	<b>9</b>

## Setup displays the “Root directory of your hard disk contains some of your original DOS files” screen.

If Setup displays this message, you must remove earlier DOS files from your root directory before setting up MS-DOS.

---

**Note** If your startup drive is a drive other than C, substitute the appropriate drive letter in the following procedure.

---

### ► To remove DOS files from your root directory

1. Create a startup disk.

To do this, insert a floppy disk in drive A, and then type the following at the command prompt:

**format a: /s**

The **format /s** command formats the floppy disk and transfers your system files to it.

2. Type the following at the command prompt:

**dir c:\ > root.txt**

This command creates a file named ROOT.TXT, which contains a list of the files in your root directory.

3. Print the ROOT.TXT file.
4. Open the PACKING.LST file on Setup Disk 1 by using any text editor. The PACKING.LST file contains the names of the files located on each of the MS-DOS Setup disks. Compare the files in the right column of the PACKING.LST file with the list of files on your ROOT.TXT printout. On your printout, mark the name of every file that appears on the Setup disks.

---

**Note** In some cases, the extensions of files may vary. For example, you might have a file named PRINT.COM in your root directory, and there might be a file named PRINT.EXE on a Setup disk. In these cases, you can mark the similarly named files on your list.

---



3. Select the drive that contains the floppy disk you want to compress by pressing the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key, and then press ENTER.

DriveSpace displays a confirmation screen stating that it is ready to compress the drive you selected.

4. To compress the floppy disk, press C.

DriveSpace checks the floppy disk for errors. Then it defragments, compresses, and mounts the floppy disk, and updates the list of drives on the main DriveSpace screen to include the newly compressed disk.

After DriveSpace finishes compressing the floppy disk:

- The floppy disk will contain more free space than it did before. You use the floppy disk just as you did before you compressed it, except that if you change floppy disks or restart your computer, you must remount the floppy disk. For more information about using a compressed floppy disk, see the following section.
- Your computer will have a new drive letter. This new drive letter represents the compressed floppy disk's host drive, which contains the floppy disk's CVF. Both the new drive letter and the original drive letter are associated with the same physical floppy disk drive. For more information, see "Understanding Disk Compression" earlier in this appendix.

## Using a Compressed Floppy Disk

In general, you use a compressed floppy disk just as you would an uncompressed floppy disk.

By default, DriveSpace automatically mounts a compressed floppy disk when you try to use that disk. This makes it possible to use the disk as if it were an uncompressed floppy disk. (However, if you turn off the Enable Automounting option in the Options dialog box, you must mount compressed floppy disks yourself. For more information, see the following section.) To gain access to the contents of a compressed floppy disk, insert the floppy disk in the drive, and then use a command such as the **dir** command (for example, if the disk is in drive A, type **dir /a**).

## Using Compressed Floppy Disks Without Automounting

If you rarely use compressed floppy disks, you might want to disable the Automounting feature. When Automounting is enabled, it uses about 4K of memory.

To disable Automounting, choose DriveSpace Options from the Tools menu, and then clear the Enable Automounting check box.

---

**Note** Before it is mounted, a compressed floppy disk appears nearly full. If you have turned off the Enable Automounting option and you change to the floppy disk drive and carry out the **dir** command, MS-DOS usually lists one file: a text file named READTHIS.TXT, which briefly explains how to mount the floppy disk. The **dir** command usually reports that the floppy disk contains almost no free space, since most of the space is used by the CVF. The CVF is a file with Hidden, Read-Only, and System attributes named DRVSPACE.000.

---

When Automounting is disabled, you can still use compressed floppy disks, but you must mount them yourself. You can do this either from the main DriveSpace screen or at the MS-DOS command prompt.

► **To mount a compressed floppy disk from the main DriveSpace screen**

1. Insert the compressed floppy disk in a drive.
2. In the main DriveSpace screen, choose the Mount command from the Drive menu.  
DriveSpace searches your computer for unmounted CVFs and lists the ones it finds.
3. Select the CVF that is located on your compressed floppy disk by using the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key, and then press ENTER.
4. DriveSpace mounts the CVF and then updates the list of compressed drives on the main DriveSpace screen to include the newly mounted floppy disk.

The compressed floppy disk remains mounted, and the files on it remain available, until you change floppy disks or restart your computer.

► **To mount a compressed floppy disk at the MS-DOS command prompt**

1. Insert the compressed floppy disk in a drive.
2. At the command prompt, type **drvspace /mount** and the letter of the drive the floppy disk is in. For example, to mount the compressed floppy disk in drive A, you would type:

**drvspace /mount a:**

DriveSpace displays the following messages:

DriveSpace is mounting drive A.  
DriveSpace has mounted drive A.

The compressed floppy disk remains mounted until you change floppy disks or restart your computer.

If you want, you can include the **drvspace /mount** command in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For example, if you usually keep a compressed floppy disk in drive B and want to mount it each time you start your computer, you could add the command **drvspace /mount b:** to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For more information about your AUTOEXEC.BAT file, see the chapter “Configuring Your System.”

## Getting Information About Compressed Drives

You can display information about your compressed drives in several ways:

- In DriveSpace, choose the Info command from the Drive menu to display detailed information about a compressed drive. For more information, press F1 while the Compressed Drive Information dialog box is on your screen. (You can also display detailed information about a drive by typing **drvspace /info** at the command prompt; for more information about this command, type **help drvspace /info**.)
- At the MS-DOS command prompt, change to the compressed drive you want information about, and then type **dir /c**. MS-DOS lists the files in the current directory and displays the actual compression ratio for each file. It also shows the average compression ratio for the entire list of files. (If the compressed drive is empty, **dir /c** does not display compression information.) For more information, type **help dir** at the command prompt.
- At the MS-DOS command prompt, type **drvspace /list** to see a list of your computer's drives and their compression status. This command lists and briefly describes all your computer's drives (except network drives). Use this command to get a more complete picture of your computer's drive configuration.
- If you use Windows, choose DriveSpace Info from the Tools menu in File Manager. For more information, press F1 while the DriveSpace Info dialog box is on your screen.

## Understanding DriveSpace and Memory

When you start your computer, MS-DOS loads DRVSPACE.BIN into memory. DRVSPACE.BIN is the part of MS-DOS that provides access to your compressed drives. It requires about 50K of memory. MS-DOS loads DRVSPACE.BIN, along with other operating system functions, before carrying out the commands in your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. Initially, DRVSPACE.BIN loads at the top of conventional memory. By default, MS-DOS moves DRVSPACE.BIN to the bottom of conventional memory after carrying out the commands in the CONFIG.SYS file.



You can use the DRVSPACE.SYS device driver to move DRVSPACE.BIN to a specific area of memory. (The DRVSPACE.SYS device driver does not provide access to compressed drives; it simply determines the final location in memory of DRVSPACE.BIN.) (DriveSpace Setup automatically adds a **device** command for the DRVSPACE.SYS device driver to your CONFIG.SYS file.)

There are two reasons you might want to use DRVSPACE.SYS to move DRVSPACE.BIN from the top of conventional memory:

- To avoid conflicts with programs that require access to the top of conventional memory.

A few programs require access to the top of conventional memory and do not work properly if DRVSPACE.BIN is located there.

- To free conventional memory.

If your computer has extended memory, DRVSPACE.SYS can move part of DRVSPACE.BIN to the high memory area (HMA). (By default, MS-DOS Setup and DriveSpace Setup configure your computer this way.) In addition, if you have an 80386 or higher computer with extended memory, you can run the MemMaker program to move the rest of DRVSPACE.BIN to the upper memory area. (For instructions on how to run MemMaker, see the chapter “Making More Memory Available.”)

For more information about DRVSPACE.SYS and DRVSPACE.BIN, type **help drvspace.sys** at the MS-DOS command prompt.

## Getting More Information About DriveSpace

For tips on using DriveSpace and answers to common questions about DriveSpace, type **help drvtips** at the command prompt.

For information about using the **drvspace** command, type **help drvspace** at the command prompt.

For information about using the DriveSpace program, press F1 while the DriveSpace program is running.

For technical information about DriveSpace, including information about writing programs that use MRCI (Microsoft Real-Time Compression Interface), obtain the Microsoft MS-DOS Resource Kit. For details, see the coupon in the back of your *Microsoft MS-DOS User's Guide*.



## Troubleshooting DriveSpace

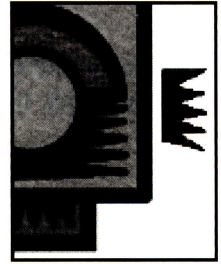
If you encounter problems while running DriveSpace, or if you encounter problems with your compressed drives, see the DriveSpace section of the README.TXT file. The README.TXT file is located in the directory that contains your MS-DOS files. You can view this file by using any text editor. For example, to view the file by using MS-DOS Editor, change to the directory that contains your MS-DOS files, and then type **edit readme.txt** at the command prompt.

If you encounter disk errors on a compressed drive, run the ScanDisk program on that drive. For more information about ScanDisk, type **help scandisk** at the command prompt.



## A P P E N D I X F

# Limited Warranties



This appendix contains information about the warranties that cover Microsoft products. The country or region in which you acquired your Microsoft product determines which warranty applies to you. This appendix includes warranties for the following countries or regions:

- Australia, New Zealand, Papua New Guinea
- Benelux (Dutch)
- Benelux (French)
- Brazil
- Canada (English)
- Canada (French)
- Commonwealth of Independent States
- Denmark
- England, Scotland, Wales, Ireland
- Finland
- France
- Germany, Switzerland, Austria, Liechtenstein
- Italy
- Latin America
- Mexico
- Norway
- Spain
- Sweden
- USA or any other country

To determine the warranty coverage for your Microsoft product, turn to the warranty for the country or region in which you acquired the product.

**If you acquired your Microsoft® product in AUSTRALIA, NEW ZEALAND, or PAPUA NEW GUINEA, the following limited warranty applies to you:**

To the full extent permitted by the Commonwealth, State, Territory or other law or laws applicable to this Agreement, any conditions or warranties imposed by such legislation are hereby excluded. Insofar as liability under or pursuant to any legislation, whether of Commonwealth, State, Territory or other government, may not be excluded, such liability is limited to:

- (i) replacement of the SOFTWARE (and any accompanying hardware, if supplied by Microsoft); or,
- (ii) correction of defects in the SOFTWARE at the exclusive option of Microsoft.

You acknowledge that no promise, representation or warranty or undertaking has been made or given by Microsoft or any person or company on its behalf in relation to the profitability of or any other consequences or benefits to be obtained from the delivery or use of the SOFTWARE and any accompanying Microsoft supplied hardware, SOFTWARE manuals, and written materials. You have relied upon your own skill and judgment in deciding to acquire the SOFTWARE and any accompanying hardware, SOFTWARE manuals, and written materials for use by you. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding between you and Microsoft in relation to the supply of SOFTWARE and any accompanying hardware, SOFTWARE manuals, and written materials from Microsoft.

Except as and to the extent that it is hereinbefore provided, under no circumstances shall Microsoft or any related company be liable for any loss, damage or injury (including without limitation any loss of profit, indirect, consequential or incidental loss, damage or injury) arising from the supply or use of the SOFTWARE and any accompanying hardware and written materials or any failure by Microsoft or any related company to perform any obligation or observe any terms of this Agreement.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of New South Wales, Australia.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Microsoft for any reason, please use the address information enclosed in this product to contact the Microsoft subsidiary serving your country or write: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**Indien u uw Microsoft®-produkt in de BENELUX hebt gekocht, geldt de volgende beperkte garantie voor u:**

**BEPERKTE GARANTIE** — Microsoft garandeert dat (a) de SOFTWARE in hoofdzaak functioneert overeenkomstig de bijbehorende produkthandboek(en) gedurende een periode van 90 dagen na de datum van ontvangst; en (b) enig door Microsoft geleverde hardware behorende bij de SOFTWARE geen gebreken vertoont wat betreft het materiaal en vakmanschap bij normaal gebruik en onderhoud gedurende een periode van een jaar na de datum van ontvangst. Impliciete garanties op de SOFTWARE en hardware zijn beperkt tot respectievelijk 90 dagen en één (1) jaar.

**VERHAALSMOGELIJKHEDEN VAN KLANTEN** — De gehele aansprakelijkheid van Microsoft en uw enige verhaalsmogelijkheid is, ter keuze van Microsoft, ofwel (a) terugbetaling van de aankoopprijs of (b) reparatie of vervanging van de SOFTWARE of hardware die niet voldoet aan de beperkte garantie van Microsoft en die geretourneerd wordt aan Microsoft met een kopie van de aanschafbon. Deze beperkte garantie geldt niet indien het gebrek in de SOFTWARE of hardware het gevolg is van een ongeluk, misbruik of verkeerd gebruik. Voor vervangende SOFTWARE wordt garantie verleend voor de resterende tijd van de oorspronkelijke garantietermijn of 30 dagen, welke van de twee het langst is.

**GEEN ANDERE GARANTIES** — MICROSOFT VERLEENT GEEN ANDERE GARANTIE, NOCH UITDRUKKELIJK NOCH IMPLICIET, DAARONDER MEDEBEGREPEN MAAR NIET BEPERKT TOT IMPLICIETE GARANTIES BETREFFENDE VERKOOPBAARHEID OF GESCHIKTHEID VOOR EEN BEPAALDE TOEPASSING, MET BETREKKING TOT DE SOFTWARE, DE DAARBIJ BEHORENDE PRODUKTHANDBOEK(EN) EN DOCUMENTATIEMATERIAAL, EN ENIGE DAARBIJ BEHORENDE HARDWARE. DEZE BEPERKTE GARANTIE GEEFT U SPECIFIEKE RECHTEN.

**GEEN AANSPRAKELIJKHEID VOOR GEVOLGSCHADE** — IN GEEN GEVAL IS MICROSOFT OF HAAR LEVERANCIERS AANSPRAKELIJK VOOR SCHADE (DAARONDER MEDEBEGREPEN MAAR NIET BEPERKT TOT SCHADEVERGOEDING VOOR WINSTDERVING, BEDRIJFSONDERBREKING, VERLIES VAN BEDRIJFSINFORMATIE OF ANDER GELDELIJK VERLIES) WELKE ONSTAAN IS DOOR HET GEBRUIK VAN OF ENIGE VERHINDERING TOT GEBRUIK VAN DIT MICROSOFT PRODUKT, OOK INDIEN MICROSOFT OP DE HOOGTE GESTELD IS VAN HET RISICO VAN DERGELIJKE SCHADE. IN IEDER GEVAL ZAL DE AANSPRAKELIJKHEID VAN MICROSOFT KRACHTENS ENIGE BEPALING VAN DEZE OVEREENKOMST BEPERKT ZIJN TOT HET DAADWERKELIJK DOOR U VOOR DE SOFTWARE BETAALDE BEDRAG.

Op deze overeenkomst is het recht van Nederland van toepassing.

Indien u vragen hebt met betrekking tot deze overeenkomst of indien u om een of andere reden contact met Microsoft wilt opnemen, schrijft u dan naar de dichtstbijzijnde Microsoft-vestiging (raadpleeg de ingesloten adresinformatie) of naar Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

## **L'acquisition du produit Microsoft® au BENELUX est gouvernée par les limites de garantie suivantes :**

**LIMITES DE GARANTIE** — Microsoft garantit (a) la performance générale du LOGICIEL conformément aux indications données par le(s) manuel(s) pour une durée de quatre-vingt-dix (90) jours à compter de la date de réception ; (b) la bonne qualité du matériel fourni par Microsoft et accompagnant le LOGICIEL ainsi que sa fabrication soignée pour une durée d'un (1) an à compter de la date de réception dans des conditions normales d'emploi et d'entretien. Toutes garanties tacites concernant le LOGICIEL et le matériel sont limitées à une durée de quatre-vingt-dix (90) jours pour le logiciel et à un (1) an pour le matériel.

**RECOURS DU CONSOMMATEUR** — En cas de responsabilité de la part de Microsoft, les recours du consommateur consisteront au gré de Microsoft soit dans (a) le remboursement du prix payé à l'achat, soit dans (b) la réparation ou le remplacement du LOGICIEL ou du matériel qui ne répondrait pas aux termes de la garantie limitée de Microsoft après le retour à Microsoft du LOGICIEL ou du matériel accompagné d'une copie du reçu. Cette garantie sera nulle si la non-performance du LOGICIEL ou du matériel est le résultat d'un accident, d'un abus ou d'une utilisation erronée quelconque. Tout LOGICIEL offert en remplacement sera garanti jusqu'à expiration de la garantie d'origine du premier LOGICIEL ou pendant une durée de trente (30) jours, la période la plus longue étant applicable.

**LIMITATIONS DE LA GARANTIE** — MICROSOFT REFUSE D'APPLIQUER TOUTES AUTRES GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES, Y COMPRIS, MAIS SANS Y ETRE LIMITE, LES GARANTIES TACITES CONCERNANT LA BONNE QUALITE ET L'UTILISATION SPECIFIQUE A LAQUELLE LE LOGICIEL, LE(S) MANUEL(S), DOCUMENT(S) ECRIT(S) ET TOUT MATERIEL L'ACCOMPAGNANT SONT DESTINES. CETTE GARANTIE RESTREINTE N'EXCLUT PAS LES DROITS AUX TERMES DE LA LOI.

**EXCLUSION DE RESPONSABILITE EN CAS DE DOMMAGE INDIRECT** — EN AUCUN CAS, MICROSOFT OU SES FOURNISSEURS NE SERONT RESPONSABLES D'UN DOMMAGE DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENT OU SUBSEQUENT (Y COMPRIS ET SANS Y ETRE LIMITE, TOUT DOMMAGE POUR MANQUE A GAGNER, INTERRUPTION, PERTE DE DONNEES OU TOUT AUTRE DOMMAGE ECONOMIQUE) RESULTANT DE TOUTE UTILISATION OU DE TOUTE IMPOSSIBILITE D'UTILISER LE PRODUIT MICROSOFT, MEME SI LA POSSIBILITE D'UN TEL DOMMAGE A DEJA ETE PORTEE A LA CONNAISSANCE DE MICROSOFT. DANS TOUS LES CAS, LA RESPONSABILITE DE MICROSOFT, CONFORMEMENT AUX TERMES DE CE CONTRAT, SERA LIMITEE AU MONTANT DU PRIX D'ACHAT PAYE POUR LE LOGICIEL.

Le présent accord est régi par le droit des Pays-Bas.

Au cas où vous auriez des questions concernant cette licence ou que vous désiriez vous mettre en rapport avec Microsoft pour quelque raison que ce soit, veuillez contacter la succursale Microsoft desservant votre pays, dont l'adresse est fournie dans ce produit, ou écrire à : Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

## **Caso V.Sa. adquiriu seu produto Microsoft® no BRASIL, o seguinte Contrato de garantia limitada aplica-se a V.Sa.:**

**GARANTIA LIMITADA** — A Microsoft garante que (a) o SOFTWARE desempenhará suas funções substancialmente em conformidade com seu(s) manual(is), por um período de 90 (noventa) dias a contar da data da entrega; (b) qualquer hardware fornecido pela Microsoft juntamente com o SOFTWARE estará isento de defeitos de fabricação e em relação aos materiais empregados, por um período de 1 (hum) ano, a contar da data da entrega, sob condições normais de utilização e manutenção. Quaisquer garantias implícitas com relação ao SOFTWARE e ao hardware ficam limitadas a 90 (noventa) dias e 1 (hum) ano, respectivamente.

**DIREITOS DO CLIENTE** — A responsabilidade integral da Microsoft, e o único direito de V.Sa. será, a critério da Microsoft, (a) a devolução do preço pago ou, alternativamente, (b) o conserto ou substituição do SOFTWARE ou hardware, sujeito aos termos da Garantia Limitada e à devolução dos mesmos à Microsoft com a cópia do recibo. Esta Garantia Limitada ficará prejudicada e não gerará efeitos se o defeito do SOFTWARE ou hardware resultar de acidente, utilização abusiva ou inadequada. Qualquer SOFTWARE substituído será garantido pelo prazo remanescente da garantia original ou por 30 (trinta) dias, no caso deste último prazo ser mais extenso.

**GARANTIAS ÚNICAS** — AS GARANTIAS SUPRA SÃO AS ÚNICAS GARANTIAS, QUER EXPRESSAS, QUER IMPLÍCITAS. FICAM EXCLUÍDAS, INCLUSIVE, EXEMPLIFICATIVAMENTE, QUAISQUER GARANTIAS IMPLÍCITAS DE COMERCIALIZAÇÃO E ADEQUAÇÃO PARA DETERMINADA APLICAÇÃO, COM RELAÇÃO AO SOFTWARE, SEUS MANUAIS E AOS MATERIAIS ESCRITOS E QUALQUER HARDWARE QUE ACOMPANHE O MESMO. ESTA GARANTIA LIMITADA LHE CONFERE DIREITOS ESPECÍFICOS.

**LIMITAÇÃO DE RESPONSABILIDADE (DANOS INDIRETOS)** — EM NENHUMA HIPÓTESE A MICROSOFT OU SEUS FORNECEDORES SERÃO RESPONSÁVEIS POR QUAISQUER OUTROS DANOS (INCLUINDO, MAS NÃO LIMITADOS, A LUCROS CESSANTES, INTERRUÇÃO DE NEGÓCIOS, PERDA DE INFORMAÇÕES E OUTROS PREJUÍZOS PECUNIÁRIOS) DECORRENTES DO USO, OU DA IMPOSSIBILIDADE DE USAR ESTE PRODUTO MICROSOFT, AINDA QUE A MICROSOFT TENHA SIDO ALERTADA QUANTO À POSSIBILIDADE DESTES DANOS. EM QUALQUER CASO, A RESPONSABILIDADE INTEGRAL DA MICROSOFT SOB ESTE CONTRATO LIMITAR-SE-Á AO VALOR EFETIVAMENTE PAGO POR V.SA. PELO SOFTWARE.

Este Contrato é regido pelas leis da República Federativa do Brasil.

Caso V.Sa. possua dúvida em relação a este Contrato de Licença ou deseje entrar em contacto com a Microsoft, utilize as informações de endereçamento que se encontram neste produto para contactar a subsidiária Microsoft no seu país ou escreva para: Microsoft Customer Sales, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**If you acquired your Microsoft® product in CANADA, the following limited warranty applies to you:**

**LIMITED WARRANTY** — Microsoft warrants that (a) the SOFTWARE will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying Product Manual(s) for a period of 90 days from the date of receipt; and (b) any Microsoft supplied hardware accompanying the SOFTWARE will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of one year from the date of receipt. Any implied warranties on the SOFTWARE and hardware are limited to 90 days and one (1) year, respectively.

**CUSTOMER REMEDIES** — Microsoft's entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at Microsoft's option, either (a) return of the price paid or (b) repair or replacement of the SOFTWARE or hardware that does not meet Microsoft's Limited Warranty and which is returned to Microsoft with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the SOFTWARE or hardware has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement SOFTWARE will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or 30 days, whichever is longer.

**NO OTHER WARRANTIES** — MICROSOFT DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT MANUAL(S) AND WRITTEN MATERIALS, AND ANY ACCOMPANYING HARDWARE. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS.

**NO LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES** — IN NO EVENT SHALL MICROSOFT OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MICROSOFT PRODUCT, EVEN IF MICROSOFT HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ANY CASE, MICROSOFT'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER ANY PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE SOFTWARE.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario, Canada. Each of the parties hereto irrevocably attorns to the jurisdiction of the courts of the Province of Ontario and further agrees to commence any litigation which may arise hereunder in the courts located in the Judicial District of York, Province of Ontario.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Microsoft for any reason, please use the address information enclosed in this product to contact the Microsoft subsidiary serving your country or write: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**Si vous avez acquis votre produit Microsoft® au CANADA, la garantie limitée suivante vous concerne :**

**GARANTIE LIMITEE** — Microsoft garantit que (a) la performance du LOGICIEL sera substantiellement en conformité avec le(s) manuel(s) de produits qui accompagne(nt) le LOGICIEL pour une période de quatre-vingt-dix (90) jours à compter de la date de réception ; et (b) tout matériel fourni par Microsoft accompagnant le LOGICIEL sera exempt de défaut de matière première ou de vice de fabrication dans des conditions normales d'utilisation et d'entretien pour une période d'un an à compter de la date de réception. Toute garantie implicite concernant le LOGICIEL et le matériel est limitée à quatre-vingt-dix (90) jours et un (1) an, respectivement.

**RECOURS DU CLIENT** — La seule obligation de Microsoft et votre recours exclusif seront, au choix de Microsoft, soit (a) le remboursement du prix payé ou (b) la réparation ou le remplacement du LOGICIEL ou du matériel qui n'est pas conforme à la Garantie Limitée de Microsoft et qui est retourné à Microsoft avec une copie de votre reçu. Cette Garantie Limitée est nulle si le défaut du LOGICIEL ou du matériel est causé par un accident, un traitement abusif ou une mauvaise application. Tout LOGICIEL de remplacement sera garanti pour le reste de la période de garantie initiale ou pour trente (30) jours, selon laquelle de ces deux périodes est la plus longue.

**AUCUNE AUTRE GARANTIE** — MICROSOFT DESAVOUE TOUTE AUTRE GARANTIE, EXPRESSE OU IMPLICITE, Y COMPRIS MAIS NE SE LIMITANT PAS AUX GARANTIES IMPLICITES DU CARACTERE ADEQUAT POUR LA COMMERCIALISATION OU UN USAGE PARTICULIER EN CE QUI CONCERNE LE LOGICIEL, LE(S) MANUEL(S) DE PRODUITS, LA DOCUMENTATION ECRITE ET TOUT MATERIEL QUI L'ACCOMPAGNENT. CETTE GARANTIE LIMITEE VOUS ACCORDE DES DROITS JURIDIQUES SPECIFIQUES.

**PAS D'OBLIGATION POUR LES DOMMAGES INDIRECTS** — MICROSOFT OU SES FOURNISSEURS N'AURONT D'OBLIGATION EN AUCUNE CIRCONSTANCE POUR TOUT AUTRE DOMMAGE QUEL QU'IL SOIT (Y COMPRIS, SANS LIMITATION, LES DOMMAGES ENTRAINES PAR LA PERTE DE BENEFICES, L'INTERRUPTION DES AFFAIRES, LA PERTE D'INFORMATION COMMERCIALE OU TOUTE AUTRE PERTE PECUNIAIRE) DECOULANT DE L'UTILISATION OU DE L'IMPOSSIBILITE D'UTILISATION DE CE PRODUIT MICROSOFT, ET CE, MEME SI MICROSOFT A ETE AVISE DE LA POSSIBILITE DE TELS DOMMAGES. EN TOUT CAS, LA SEULE OBLIGATION DE MICROSOFT EN VERTU DE TOUTE DISPOSITION DE CETTE CONVENTION SE LIMITERA AU MONTANT EN FAIT PAYE PAR VOUS POUR LE LOGICIEL.

La présente Convention est régie par les lois de la province d'Ontario, Canada. Chacune des parties à la présente reconnaît irrévocablement la compétence des tribunaux de la province d'Ontario et consent à instituer tout litige qui pourrait découler de la présente auprès des tribunaux situés dans le district judiciaire de York, province d'Ontario.

Au cas où vous auriez des questions concernant cette licence ou que vous désiriez vous mettre en rapport avec Microsoft pour quelque raison que ce soit, veuillez contacter la succursale Microsoft desservant votre pays, dont l'adresse est fournie dans ce produit, ou écrire à : Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

**Если Вы приобрели продукцию корпорации Microsoft® на территории СОДРУЖЕСТВА НЕЗАВИСИМЫХ ГОСУДАРСТВ, то нижеследующая ограниченная гарантия относится к Вам:**

**ОГРАНИЧЕННАЯ ГАРАНТИЯ** — Microsoft гарантирует Вам следующее: (а) ПРОГРАММА MICROSOFT будет нормально работать в соответствии с прилагаемой инструкцией по эксплуатации в течение шести (6) месяцев после приобретения, согласно дате на квитанции; (б) любые физические устройства (hardware), поставляемые Microsoft в комплекте с ПРОГРАММОЙ MICROSOFT будут при нормальном использовании и обслуживании гарантированы от дефектов в материале и изготовлении в течение одного (1) года со дня приобретения, согласно дате на квитанции. Любые предполагаемые гарантии на ПРОГРАММУ MICROSOFT и физические устройства ограничены шестью (6) месяцами и одним (1) годом соответственно.

**РЕКЛАМАЦИИ И КОМПЕНСАЦИИ** — Согласно ответственности Microsoft за данный продукт, а также Вашему праву на рекламацию, предоставив копию квитанции, Вы можете выбрать по Вашему усмотрению следующее: (а) получить полный возврат уплаченной стоимости после возвращения ПРОГРАММЫ MICROSOFT или физических устройств; (б) получить пропорциональное снижение оплаченной стоимости; (в) получить исправленные или замененные ПРОГРАММУ MICROSOFT или физические устройства, не соответствующие условиям ограниченной гарантии Microsoft и возвращенные изготовителю. Данная ограниченная гарантия является недействительной, если неполадки в программе Microsoft или в физических устройствах появились в результате аварии, умышленного повреждения или нарушения инструкций по пользованию. Любая замененная ПРОГРАММА MICROSOFT будет содержать гарантию на оставшийся гарантийный срок или на 30 дней, в зависимости от того, какой срок длиннее.

**ОТКАЗ ОТ ДРУГИХ ГАРАНТИЙ** — MICROSOFT ОТКАЗЫВАЕТСЯ ОТ ВСЕХ ДРУГИХ ГАРАНТИЙ, КАК ЯВНЫХ, ТАК И ПРЕДПОЛАГАЕМЫХ, ВКЛЮЧАЯ (НО НЕ ОГРАНИЧИВАЯСЬ ТОЛЬКО ИМИ) ПРЕДПОЛАГАЕМЫЕ ГАРАНТИИ НА ПОКУПАТЕЛЬСКУЮ СПОСОБНОСТЬ И СООТВЕТСТВИЕ СПЕЦИАЛЬНЫМ ТРЕБОВАНИЯМ, ЧТО ОТНОСИТСЯ К ПРОГРАММЕ MICROSOFT, А ТАКЖЕ К НАХОДЯЩИМСЯ В КОМПЛЕКТЕ РУКОВОДСТВАМ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ, ПЕЧАТНЫМ МАТЕРИАЛАМ И ЛЮБЫМ ФИЗИЧЕСКИМ УСТРОЙСТВАМ. ЭТА ОГРАНИЧЕННАЯ ГАРАНТИЯ ПРЕДОСТАВЛЯЕТ ВАМ ОСОБЫЕ ЮРИДИЧЕСКИЕ ПРАВА.

**ОТКАЗ ОТ ОТВЕТСТВЕННОСТИ ЗА СОПУТСТВУЮЩИЕ УБЫТКИ** — MICROSOFT ИЛИ ЕГО ПОСТАВЩИКИ НИ ПРИ КАКИХ УСЛОВИЯХ НЕ НЕСУТ ОТВЕТСТВЕННОСТИ ЗА КАКОЙ-ЛИБО УЩЕРБ (ВКЛЮЧАЯ ВСЕ, БЕЗ ИСКЛЮЧЕНИЯ, СЛУЧАИ ПОТЕРИ ПРИБЫЛЕЙ, ПРЕРЫВАНИЯ ДЕЛОВОЙ АКТИВНОСТИ, ПОТЕРИ ДЕЛОВОЙ ИНФОРМАЦИИ ИЛИ ДРУГИХ ДЕНЕЖНЫХ ПОТЕРЬ), СВЯЗАННЫЙ С ИСПОЛЬЗОВАНИЕМ ИЛИ НЕВОЗМОЖНОСТЬЮ ИСПОЛЬЗОВАНИЯ ДАННОГО ПРОДУКТА MICROSOFT, ДАЖЕ ЕСЛИ MICROSOFT БЫЛ ИЗВЕЩЕН ЗАРАНЕЕ О ВОЗМОЖНОСТИ ТАКИХ ПОТЕРЬ. В ЛЮБОМ СЛУЧАЕ, СУММА ВОЗМЕЩЕНИЯ, СОГЛАСНО ДАННОМУ ДОГОВОРУ, НЕ МОЖЕТ ПРЕВЫШАТЬ СУММУ, ФАКТИЧЕСКИ УПЛАЧЕННУЮ ВАМИ ЗА ПРОГРАММУ MICROSOFT.

Если у Вас возникли какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся данного Соглашения, или если Вы хотите связаться с Microsoft по любому другому поводу, пожалуйста, используйте адрес, прилагаемый к данному продукту, чтобы связаться с филиалом Microsoft, обслуживающим Вашу страну, или пишите по адресу: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



## Hvis De har købt Deres Microsoft®-produkt i DANMARK, gælder følgende begrænset ansvar for Dem:

**BEGRÆNSET ANSVAR** — a) Microsoft står alene inde for, at softwaren i alt væsentligt vil fungere i overensstemmelse med de ledsagende håndbøger i en periode af 90 dage fra modtagelsen; b) og at al hardware, leveret af Microsoft, som ledsager softwaren, vil være fri for håndværks- og materiale-mæssige fejl under normal brug og servicering i en periode af et år fra modtagelsen. Enhver stiltiende garanti vedrørende softwaren og hardwaren er ligeledes begrænset til 90 dage respektive et år.

**BRUGERENS MISLIGHOLDELSSEBEFØJELSER** — Microsofts totale ansvar og Deres eneste misligholdelsesbeføjelser er, efter Microsofts valg enten a) refundering af købesummen, eller; b) reparation eller omlevering af softwaren eller hardwaren, som ikke opfylder kravene i den ovenstående klausul om begrænset ansvar, når denne er blevet returneret til Microsoft vedlagt en kopi af Deres kvittering. De har dog intet krav under klausulen om begrænset ansvar, hvis manglerne ved softwaren eller hardwaren er opstået som et resultat af udefra kommende skade herpå samt bevidst eller ubevidst forkert brug.

**INGEN ANDRE GARANTIER** — MICROSOFT FRASKRIVER SIG UDTRYKKELIGT ALLE ANDRE GARANTIER, UDTRYKKELIGE SÅVEL SOM STILTIENDE — INKLUSIVE, MEN IKKE BEGRÆNSET TIL, STILTIENDE GARANTIER OM, AT PRODUKTERNE ER KURANTE ELLER KAN ANVENDES TIL SÆRLIGE FORMÅL — FOR SÅ VIDT ANGÅR SOFTWAREN, DE LEDSAGENDE HÅNDBØGER OG SKRIFTLIGT MATERIALE OG LEDSAGENDE HARDWARE.

**BEGRÆNSNINGER I ANSVARET** — MICROSOFT ELLER MICROSOFTS LEVERANDØRER SKAL PÅ INGEN ANDEN MÅDE VÆRE PLIGTIG AT BETALE NOGEN SOM HELST ERSTATNING (INKL., UDEN BEGRÆNSNINGER, ERSTATNING FOR DRIFTSTAB, FORSTYRRELSE AF VIRKSOMHED, TAB AF OPLYSNINGER FOR VIRKSOMHEDEN, ELLER ANDET TAB) , SOM OPSTÅR PÅ BAGGRUND AF BRUGEN ELLER DEN MANGLENDE BRUGBARHED AF DETTE MICROSOFT-PRODUKT SELV OM MICROSOFT MÅTTE VÆRE BLEVET NOTIFICERET OM RISIKOEN FOR SÅDAN ERSTATNING. UNDER ALLE OMSTÆNDIGHEDER SKAL MICROSOFTS FULDE ANSVAR UNDER ENHVER BESTEMMELSE I DENNE AFTALE VÆRE BEGRÆNSET TIL DET BELØB, SOM DE FAKTISK HAR BETALT FOR SOFTWAREN.

Denne aftale er underlagt retten i the State of Washington, U.S.A.

Hvis De har spørgsmål vedrørende denne licensaftale, eller hvis De ønsker at kontakte Microsoft i en anden forbindelse, kan De anvende vedlagte adresseliste og kontakte et Microsoft-datterselskab. De kan også kontakte Microsoft i USA på følgende adresse: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

**If you acquired your Microsoft® product in ENGLAND, SCOTLAND, WALES or IRELAND, the following limited warranty applies to you:**

**LIMITED WARRANTY** — Microsoft warrants that (a) the SOFTWARE will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying Product Manual(s) for a period of 90 days from the date of receipt; and (b) any Microsoft supplied hardware accompanying the SOFTWARE will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of one year from the date of receipt. Any implied warranties on the SOFTWARE and hardware are limited to 90 days and one (1) year, respectively, or the shortest period permitted by applicable law, whichever is greater.

**CUSTOMER REMEDIES** — Microsoft's entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at Microsoft's option, either (a) return of the price paid or (b) repair or replacement of the SOFTWARE or hardware that does not meet Microsoft's Limited Warranty and which is returned to Microsoft with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the SOFTWARE or hardware has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement SOFTWARE will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or 30 days, whichever is longer.

**NO OTHER WARRANTIES** — TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, MICROSOFT DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT MANUAL(S) AND WRITTEN MATERIALS, AND ANY ACCOMPANYING HARDWARE. THE LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINED HEREIN GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS.

**NO LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES** — TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, MICROSOFT AND ITS SUPPLIERS SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MICROSOFT PRODUCT, EVEN IF MICROSOFT HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ANY CASE, MICROSOFT'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER ANY PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE SOFTWARE.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of England.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Microsoft for any reason, please use the address information enclosed in this product to contact the Microsoft subsidiary serving your country or write: Microsoft Customer Sales and Services, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**Mikäli olette hankkineet Microsoft®-tuotteenne SUOMESTA, sovelletaan Teihin seuraavaa rajoitettua takuuta.**

**RAJOITETTU TAKUU** — Microsoft takaa, että (a) OHJELMISTO suoriutuu olennaisilta osiltaan oheistetun tuoteoppaan (-oppaiden) mukaisesti vastaanottopäivästä 90 päivän aikana ja (b) missään Microsoftin OHJELMISTON mukana toimittamassa laitteistossa ei ole tavanomaisessa käytössä ja palveluksessa yhden vuoden aikana vastaanottopäivästä ilmeneviä materiaalivikoja ja laatuvirheitä. Kaikki oletettu vastuu on rajoitettu ohjelmiston osalta 90 päiväksi ja laitteiston osalta yhdeksi (1) vuodeksi.

**ASIAKKAAN OIKEUDET** — Microsoftin koko vastuu ja Teidän kaikki oikeutenne rajoittuvat, Microsoftin valinnan mukaan, joko (a) maksetun kauppahinnan palauttamiseen tai (b) niiden Microsoftille kuittijäljennöksen kanssa palautettujen ohjelmistojen tai laitteistojen, jotka eivät vastaa Microsoftin rajoitettua takuuta, korjauttamiseen tai uusimiseen. Tämä rajoitettu takuu on mitätön, jos ohjelmiston tai laitteiston vika on johtunut onnettomuudesta, väärinkäytöksestä tai ohjelmiston tai laitteiston väärinasentamisesta. Jokainen korvattu OHJELMISTO kuuluu takuun piiriin 30 päiväksi tai jäljellejääväksi alkuperäiseksi takuujaksi riippuen siitä, kumpi niistä on pitempi.

**MUUT TAKUUT** — MICROSOFT TORJUU PÄTEMÄTTÖMINÄ KAIKKI MUUT TAKUUT JA VASTUUT, JOKO ILMAISTUT TAI OLETETUT, MUKAAN LUKIEN OLETETUT VASTUUT SOVELTUVUUDESTA JA SOPIVUUDESTA JOHONKIN ERITYISEEN TARKOITUKSEEN, KÄSITTÄEN OHJELMISTON, LIITETYN TUOTEOPPAAN (-OPPAIDEN), KIRJOITETUN MATERIAALIN JA KAIKKI LIITETYT LAITTEET. TÄMÄ RAJOITETTU TAKUU ANTAA TEILLE NIMENOMAISET OIKEUDET.

**VASTUU VÄLILLISISTÄ VAHINGOISTA** — MISSÄÄN TAPAUKSESSA MICROSOFT TAI SEN TOIMITTAJAT EIVÄT OLE VASTUUSSA MISTÄÄN MUISTA VAHINGOISTA (MUKAAN LUKIEN ILMAN RAJOITUSTA VAHINGOT, JOTKA JOHTUVAT LIIKETOIMINNAN VOITTOJEN MENETTÄMISESTÄ, LIIKETOIMINNAN KESKEYTTÄMISESTÄ, LIIKETOIMINNAN TIETOJEN MENETTÄMISESTÄ, TAI MUUSTA RAHALLISESTA MENETYKSESTÄ), JOTKA SYNTYVÄT MICROSOFT-TUOTTEEN KÄYTÖSTÄ TAI KYKENEMÄTTÖMYYYDESTÄ KÄYTTÄÄ SITÄ, VAIKKA MICROSOFTIA ON VAROITETTU SELLAISTEN VAHINKOJEN MAHDOLLISUUDESTA. JOKA TAPAUKSESSA MICROSOFTIN VASTUU ON RAJOITETTU SIIHEN MÄÄRÄÄN, JONKA ITSE MAKSOITTE OHJELMISTOSTA.

Tähän sopimukseen sovelletaan Suomen lakia.

Jos Teillä on tätä sopimusta koskevia kysymyksiä tai haluatte jostain muusta syystä ottaa yhteyttä Microsoftiin, olkaa hyvä ja käyttäkää tässä tuotteessa olevia maatanne palvelevan tytäryhtiön yhteystietoja tai kirjoittakaa: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

**Si vous avez acheté votre produit Microsoft® en FRANCE, les limites de garantie suivantes vous concernent.**

**LIMITES DE GARANTIE** — Microsoft garantit, sous réserve d'une exploitation dans des conditions normales d'utilisation, a) que le LOGICIEL permettra une utilisation conforme, pour l'essentiel, aux performances définies dans le(s) manuel(s) accompagnant le LOGICIEL, pendant une période de quatre-vingt-dix (90) jours suivant la date de son acquisition, et b) que les supports et matériels de Microsoft fournis avec le LOGICIEL sont exempts de vice de fabrication ; cette dernière garantie étant limitée à une année à compter de la date d'acquisition du LOGICIEL. Toute garantie intrinsèque, de quelque nature que ce soit, sera limitée à quatre-vingt-dix (90) jours pour le LOGICIEL et à un (1) an pour les supports et matériels et ce, sous les mêmes réserves.

**RECOURS DU CLIENT** — En cas de défectuosité, les obligations de Microsoft et les droits de l'utilisateur se limiteront, au choix de Microsoft, soit a) au remboursement du prix payé, soit b) à la réparation ou au remplacement du LOGICIEL ou du matériel non conforme à la garantie limitée de Microsoft qui est envoyé à Microsoft accompagné d'une copie du justificatif d'achat du LOGICIEL. Toutefois, la garantie limitée de Microsoft ne sera pas applicable au cas où la défectuosité résulterait d'un accident, d'un abus ou d'une mauvaise utilisation. Tout LOGICIEL de remplacement sera garanti pour la période de la garantie d'origine restant à courir, ou trente (30) jours suivant la date de remplacement au cas où cette dernière période serait plus longue.

**EXCLUSION DE TOUTE AUTRE GARANTIE** — MICROSOFT N'ASSUME AUCUNE GARANTIE DE QUELQUE NATURE ET A QUELQUE TITRE QUE CE SOIT, EXPLICITE OU IMPLICITE, EN RAPPORT AVEC LE LOGICIEL, LES MANUELS, LA DOCUMENTATION L'ACCOMPAGNANT OU TOUT SUPPORT OU MATERIEL FOURNI, ET NOTAMMENT DES GARANTIES POUR LA COMMERCIALISATION DE TOUTS PRODUITS EN RAPPORT AVEC LE LOGICIEL, OU DE L'UTILISATION DU LOGICIEL POUR USAGE DETERMINE.

**ABSENCE DE RESPONSABILITE POUR LES DOMMAGES INDIRECTS** — EN AUCUN CAS MICROSOFT OU SES FOURNISSEURS NE POURRONT ETRE TENUS RESPONSABLES DE TOUT DOMMAGE DE QUELQUE NATURE QUE CE SOIT, NOTAMMENT PERTE D'EXPLOITATION, PERTE DE DONNEES OU TOUTE AUTRE PERTE FINANCIERE RESULTANT DE L'UTILISATION OU DE L'IMPOSSIBILITE D'UTILISER LE PRODUIT MICROSOFT, MEME SI MICROSOFT A ETE PREVENU DE L'EVENTUALITE DE TELS DOMMAGES. EN TOUT ETAT DE CAUSE, LA RESPONSABILITE DE MICROSOFT NE POURRA EN AUCUN CAS EXCEDER LE MONTANT EFFECTIVEMENT PAYE POUR L'ACQUISITION DU LOGICIEL. AFIN DE DETERMINER SI LA LIMITE DE RESPONSABILITE DE MICROSOFT A ETE ATTEINTE, IL SERA TENU COMPTE DE L'ENSEMBLE DES SOMMES QUI AURAIENT EVENTUELLEMENT ETE REGLEES PAR MICROSOFT A CE TITRE.

Le présent accord est régi par le droit français. Tout litige qui en résulterait sera de la compétence exclusive des tribunaux du siège social de la société Microsoft France.

Au cas où vous auriez des questions concernant cette licence ou que vous désiriez vous mettre en rapport avec Microsoft pour quelque raison que ce soit, veuillez contacter la succursale Microsoft desservant votre pays, dont l'adresse est fournie dans ce produit, ou écrire à : Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**Wenn Sie Ihr Microsoft®-Produkt in DEUTSCHLAND erworben haben, gilt für Sie die folgende beschränkte Garantie:**

**BESCHRÄNKTE GARANTIE** — Microsoft garantiert (a) für einen Zeitraum von 90 Tagen ab Empfangsdatum, daß die SOFTWARE im wesentlichen gemäß dem begleitenden Produkthandbuch arbeitet, und (b) für einen Zeitraum von einem Jahr ab Empfangsdatum, daß eine die SOFTWARE begleitende, von Microsoft gelieferte Hardware bei normaler Benutzung und Wartung frei von Material- oder Verarbeitungsfehlern ist. Die Garantie ist bezüglich der SOFTWARE auf 90 Tage und bezüglich der Hardware auf ein (1) Jahr beschränkt. DIESE GARANTIE WIRD VON MICROSOFT ALS HERSTELLER DES PRODUKTES ÜBERNOMMEN; ETWAIGE GESETZLICHE GEWÄHRLEISTUNGS- ODER HAFTUNGSANSPRÜCHE GEGEN DEN HÄNDLER, VON DEM SIE IHR EXEMPLAR DER SOFTWARE BEZOGEN HABEN, WERDEN HIERDURCH WEDER ERSETZT NOCH BESCHRÄNKT.

**ANSPRÜCHE DES KUNDEN** — Die gesamte Haftung von Microsoft und Ihr alleiniger Anspruch besteht nach Wahl von Microsoft entweder (a) in der Rückerstattung des bezahlten Preises oder (b) in der Reparatur oder dem Ersatz der SOFTWARE oder der Hardware, die der beschränkten Garantie von Microsoft nicht genügt und zusammen mit einer Kopie Ihrer Quittung an Microsoft zurückgegeben wird. Diese beschränkte Garantie gilt nicht, wenn der Ausfall der SOFTWARE oder der Hardware auf einen Unfall, auf Mißbrauch oder auf fehlerhafte Anwendung zurückzuführen ist. Für eine Ersatz-SOFTWARE übernimmt Microsoft nur für den Rest der ursprünglichen Garantiefrist oder für 30 Tage eine Garantie, wobei der längere Zeitraum maßgebend ist.

**KEINE WEITERE GEWÄHRLEISTUNG** — MICROSOFT SCHLIESST FÜR SICH JEDE WEITERE GEWÄHRLEISTUNG BEZÜGLICH DER SOFTWARE, DER ZUGEHÖRIGEN HANDBÜCHER UND SCHRIFTLICHEN MATERIALIEN UND DER BEGLEITENDEN HARDWARE AUS.

**KEINE HAFTUNG FÜR FOLGESCHÄDEN** — WEDER MICROSOFT NOCH DIE LIEFERANTEN VON MICROSOFT SIND FÜR IRGENDWELCHE SCHÄDEN (UNEINGESCHRÄNKT EINGESCHLOSSEN SIND SCHÄDEN AUS ENTGANGENEM GEWINN, BETRIEBSUNTERBRECHUNG, VERLUST VON GESCHÄFTLICHEN INFORMATIONEN ODER VON DATEN ODER AUS ANDEREM FINANZIELLEN VERLUST) ERSATZPFLICHTIG, DIE AUFGRUND DER BENUTZUNG DIESES MICROSOFT-PRODUKTES ODER DER UNFÄHIGKEIT, DIESES MICROSOFT-PRODUKT ZU VERWENDEN, ENTSTEHEN, SELBST WENN MICROSOFT VON DER MÖGLICHKEIT EINES SOLCHEN SCHADENS UNTERRICHTET WORDEN IST. AUF JEDEN FALL IST DIE HAFTUNG VON MICROSOFT AUF DEN BETRAG BESCHRÄNKT, DEN SIE TATSÄCHLICH FÜR DAS PRODUKT BEZAHLT HABEN. DIESER AUSSCHLUSS GILT NICHT FÜR SCHÄDEN, DIE DURCH VORSATZ ODER GROBE FAHRLÄSSIGKEIT AUF SEITEN VON MICROSOFT VERURSACHT WURDEN. EBENFALLS BLEIBEN ANSPRÜCHE, DIE AUF UNABDINGBAREN GESETZLICHEN VORSCHRIFTEN ZUR PRODUKTHAFTUNG BERUHEN, UNBERÜHRT.

Sollten Sie Fragen zu diesem Vertrag haben, oder sollten Sie sich mit Microsoft aus irgendwelchen Gründen in Verbindung setzen wollen, verwenden Sie bitte die diesem Produkt beiliegende Adresseninformation, um mit der für Ihr Land zuständigen Microsoft-Niederlassung Kontakt aufzunehmen, oder schreiben Sie an: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

## Ogni acquisto di prodotti Microsoft® in ITALIA è sottoposto ai seguenti limiti di garanzia:

**LIMITI DI GARANZIA** — La Microsoft garantisce che (a) il SOFTWARE funzionerà in sostanziale conformità con il (i) manuale (i) ed il materiale scritto di accompagnamento al prodotto per un periodo di 90 giorni dalla data di acquisto; e (b) ogni hardware (es. i dischetti) annesso al SOFTWARE sarà privo di difetti di materiale e di fabbricazione sotto uso e servizio normali, per un periodo di un anno dalla data di acquisto. Ogni garanzia implicita su SOFTWARE e hardware è limitata, rispettivamente, a 90 giorni ed un (1) anno.

**TUTELA DEL CLIENTE** — La responsabilità della Microsoft ed i rimedi esclusivi dell'utente saranno, a discrezione della Microsoft, (a) la restituzione del prezzo pagato; o (b) la riparazione o la sostituzione del SOFTWARE o dell'hardware che non rientrano nella Garanzia di cui sopra, purché siano restituiti alla Microsoft con una copia della fattura di acquisto o ricevuta fiscale regolarmente emessa in Italia. La presente Garanzia viene meno qualora il vizio del SOFTWARE o dell'hardware derivi da incidente, uso inidoneo od erronea applicazione. Ogni SOFTWARE sostitutivo sarà garantito per il rimanente periodo della garanzia originaria e in ogni caso per non meno di 30 giorni.

**ESCLUSIONE DI ALTRE GARANZIE** — LA MICROSOFT NON RICONOSCE ALCUNA ALTRA GARANZIA, ESPRESSA O IMPLICITA, COMPRESE, TRA LE ALTRE, LA GARANZIA DI COMMERCIALIZZABILITÀ ED IDONEITÀ PER UN FINE PARTICOLARE, RELATIVAMENTE AL SOFTWARE, AL MATERIALE SCRITTO DI ACCOMPAGNAMENTO ED AD OGNI HARDWARE ANNESSO.

**ESCLUSIONE DI RESPONSABILITÀ PER DANNI INDIRETTI** — IN NESSUN CASO LA MICROSOFT O I SUOI FORNITORI SARANNO RESPONSABILI PER I DANNI (INCLUSI, SENZA LIMITAZIONI, IL DANNO PER PERDITA O MANCATO GUADAGNO, INTERRUZIONE DELL'ATTIVITÀ, PERDITA DI INFORMAZIONI O ALTRE PERDITE ECONOMICHE) DERIVANTI DALL'USO DEL PRODOTTO MICROSOFT, ANCHE NEL CASO CHE LA MICROSOFT SIA STATA AVVERTITA DELLA POSSIBILITÀ DI TALI DANNI. IN OGNI CASO, LA RESPONSABILITÀ DELLA MICROSOFT AI SENSI DEL PRESENTE CONTRATTO SARÀ LIMITATA AD UN IMPORTO CORRISPONDENTE A QUELLO EFFETTIVAMENTE PAGATO PER IL SOFTWARE.

Chiunque desideri porre domande in ordine a questo Contratto, o contattare la Microsoft per qualunque ragione, può rivolgersi alla filiale Microsoft responsabile per il proprio paese all'indirizzo accluso in questo prodotto oppure scrivere a: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**Si usted adquirió su producto Microsoft® en cualquier país de LATINOAMERICA (con excepción de Brasil y México), el uso del software se regirá por la siguiente garantía limitada:**

**GARANTIA LIMITADA** — Microsoft garantiza (a) que el SOFTWARE podrá ser operado substancialmente de acuerdo a lo indicado por el o los manuales del producto incluido/s en el paquete, por un período de noventa (90) días contados a partir de la fecha de entrega; y (b) que cualquier equipamiento o parte de equipamiento provista por Microsoft que acompañe al SOFTWARE (en adelante “EQUIPAMIENTO”) estará libre de defectos de material o de mano de obra, bajo condiciones de uso y servicio normales, por un período de un (1) año contado a partir de la fecha de entrega. Cualquier garantía implícita sobre el SOFTWARE o el EQUIPAMIENTO estará limitada a noventa (90) días y un (1) año respectivamente.

**RECURSOS DEL LICENCIATARIO** — La sola obligación de Microsoft y el único recurso de usted será, a opción de Microsoft, ya sea:

(a) rembolsar el precio pagado; o (b) reparar o reemplazar el SOFTWARE o el EQUIPAMIENTO que no esté de acuerdo con la Garantía Limitada Microsoft y que sea devuelto a Microsoft con una copia de su recibo. Esta Garantía Limitada será nula en caso de que la falla del SOFTWARE o del EQUIPAMIENTO resulte de accidente, abuso o uso indebido. Cualquier reemplazo del SOFTWARE estará garantizado por el resto del término de la garantía original o por el de treinta (30) días; el que resulte mayor.

**INEXISTENCIA DE OTRAS GARANTIAS** — MICROSOFT NO RECONOCE OTRAS GARANTIAS, EXPRESAS O IMPLICITAS, INCLUYENDO -PERO NO LIMITANDOSE A ELLAS- GARANTIAS IMPLICITAS DE COMERCIALIZACION Y ADECUACION A UN PROPOSITO EN ESPECIAL, CON RESPECTO AL SOFTWARE, EL O LOS MANUALES Y MATERIALES IMPRESOS, Y CUALQUIER EQUIPAMIENTO QUE LO ACOMPAÑE. ESTA GARANTIA LIMITADA LE OTORGA A USTED DERECHOS ESPECIFICOS.

**AUSENCIA DE RESPONSABILIDAD POR DAÑOS RESULTANTES** — EN NINGUN CASO MICROSOFT O SUS LICENCIANTES O PROVEEDORES SERAN RESPONSABLES POR CUALQUIER OTRO DAÑO (INCLUYENDO, SIN LIMITACION, DAÑOS POR PERDIDA DE GANANCIAS EN LOS NEGOCIOS, PERDIDA DE INFORMACION COMERCIAL U OTRA PERDIDA PECUNIARIA) RESULTANTE DEL USO O INCAPACIDAD DE USAR ESTE PRODUCTO MICROSOFT, AUN CUANDO MICROSOFT HAYA SIDO ADVERTIDO SOBRE LA POSIBILIDAD DE DICHOS DAÑOS. EN CUALQUIER CASO, LA COMPLETA RESPONSABILIDAD CONFORME A CUALQUIER CLAUSULA DE ESTE CONTRATO ESTARA LIMITADA AL MONTO REAL PAGADO POR USTED POR ESTE SOFTWARE.

Si usted tiene alguna duda acerca de este Acuerdo o si desea contactar, por cualquier motivo, con Microsoft, utilice por favor la información con la dirección que se adjunta con este producto para contactar con su subsidiaria Microsoft o escriba a: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

**Si usted adquirió su Producto Microsoft® en MÉXICO entonces le es aplicable la garantía limitada que aparece a continuación:**

**GARANTIA LIMITADA** — Microsoft garantiza (a) que el SOFTWARE funcionará sustancialmente de acuerdo con el o los Manuales del Producto que acompañan al SOFTWARE, por un período de noventa (90) días a partir de la fecha de su entrega; y (b) que todo el equipo de computación que acompaña al SOFTWARE estará libre de defectos por lo que se refiere a sus materiales y mano de obra, bajo condiciones normales de uso y servicio, por un período de un (1) año a partir de la fecha de su entrega. Todas las garantías implícitas respecto del SOFTWARE y el equipo están limitadas a noventa (90) días y un (1) año, respectivamente.

**RECURSOS DEL CLIENTE** — La responsabilidad total que Microsoft tiene y el recurso único que usted tiene, a opción de Microsoft, es

(a) devolverle el precio pagado, o (b) reparar o restituir el SOFTWARE o equipo de computación que no se ajuste a la Garantía Limitada de Microsoft y que sea devuelto a Microsoft con una copia de su factura. Esta Garantía Limitada quedará sin efectos si el mal funcionamiento del SOFTWARE o equipo se debe a accidentes, abusos o aplicación indebida del mismo. Cualquier restitución del SOFTWARE estará garantizada por el resto del período de garantía original o treinta (30) días, lo que sea mayor.

**NINGUNA OTRA GARANTIA** — MICROSOFT DESCONOCE CUALQUIER OTRA GARANTIA EXPRESA O IMPLICITA, INCLUYENDO, SIN LIMITAR, LAS GARANTIAS IMPLICITAS O DE COMERCIALIZACION Y ADECUACION PARA UN FIN PARTICULAR CON RESPECTO AL SOFTWARE, EL O LOS MANUALES Y MATERIALES ESCRITOS QUE LE ACOMPAÑAN, Y CUALQUIER EQUIPO DE COMPUTACION QUE ASIMISMO VAYA INCLUIDO. ESTA GARANTIA LIMITADA LE CONFIERE DERECHOS ESPECIFICOS CONFORME A LA LEY.

**NINGUNA RESPONSABILIDAD POR DAÑOS INDIRECTOS** — EN NINGUN CASO, MICROSOFT O SUS PROVEEDORES SERAN RESPONSABLES POR DAÑOS DE CUALQUIER NATURALEZA (INCLUYENDO SIN LIMITAR, PERDIDAS DE UTILIDADES, INTERRUPCION DE OPERACIONES, PERDIDA DE INFORMACION COMERCIAL U OTROS DAÑOS PECUNIARIOS) QUE SE DERIVEN DEL USO O INCAPACIDAD DE USAR EL PRODUCTO MICROSOFT, AUN CUANDO MICROSOFT HAYA SIDO INFORMADA SOBRE LA POSIBILIDAD DE DICHOS DAÑOS. EN CUALQUIER CASO, LA RESPONSABILIDAD MAXIMA A CARGO DE MICROSOFT CONFORME A LAS ESTIPULACIONES DE ESTE CONTRATO ESTARA LIMITADA AL IMPORTE QUE EFECTIVAMENTE USTED HAYA PAGADO POR CONCEPTO DEL SOFTWARE.

Este Contrato estará regulado por las leyes de los Estados Unidos Mexicanos.

Si usted tiene alguna duda acerca de este Acuerdo o si desea contactar, por cualquier motivo, con Microsoft, utilice por favor la información con la dirección que se adjunta con este producto para contactar con su subsidiaria Microsoft o escriba a: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

## Hvis De har kjøpt Deres Microsoft®-produkt i NORGE, gjelder begrenset garanti i denne avtale:

**BEGRENSET GARANTI** — Microsoft garanterer at (a) PROGRAMVAREN fungerer i det vesentlige i overensstemmelse med medfølgende brukerveiledning(er) for en periode av 90 dager fra dato for mottagelsen; og at (b) ethvert utstyr som leveres av Microsoft og som følger PROGRAMVAREN ikke har materialmangler eller utførelsesmangler ved normal bruk og ytelse for en periode av ett år fra dato for mottagelsen. Enhver stilltiende garanti for PROGRAMVAREN og utstyr er begrenset til henholdsvis 90 dager og ett (1) år.

**KUNDENS RETTIGHETER** — Microsofts fulle ansvar og Deres eneste krav skal være, etter Microsofts valg, enten (a) tilbakebetaling av kjøpesummen eller (b) av hjelp eller omlevering av PROGRAMVAREN og utstyr som ikke tilfredsstiller Microsofts Begrensede Garanti og som er returnert til Microsoft sammen med en kopi av Deres faktura. Denne Begrensede Garanti gjelder ikke dersom mangler ved PROGRAMVAREN eller utstyret skyldes uhell, misbruk eller feilaktig anvendelse. Enhver omlevert PROGRAMVARE er garantert for den lengste periode av det gjenværende av garantiperioden eller 30 dager.

**INGEN ØVRIGE GARANTIER** — MICROSOFT FRASKRIVER SEG ETHVERT ØVRIG GARANTIANSVAR, ENTEN DETTE ER DIREKTE ELLER STILLTIENDE, HERUNDER, MEN IKKE BEGRENSET TIL, STILLTIENDE GARANTIER OM SALGBARHET OG ANVENDELIGHET FOR SÆRSKILTE FORMÅL. DENNE ANSVARSFRASKRIVELSE GJELDER MED HENSYN TIL PROGRAMVAREN, MEDFØLGENDE BRUKERVEILEDNING(ER) OG SKRIFTLIG MATERIALE, OG ETHVERT MEDFØLGENDE UTSTYR. DENNE BEGRENSEDE GARANTI GIR DEM SPESIFIKKE RETTIGHETER.

**ØVRIGE ANSVARSBEGRENSNINGER** — I INTET ØVRIG TILFELLE SKAL MICROSOFT ELLER DETS LEVERANDØRER ELLER RETTSFORGJENGERE VÆRE ANSVARLIG FOR TAP OG SKADER AV EN HVILKEN SOM HELST ART (HERUNDER, UTEN BEGRENSNING, TAP AV FORTJENESTE, DRIFTSAVBRUDD, TAP AV INFORMASJON I VIRKSOMHETEN ELLER ØVRIG ØKONOMISK TAP) SOM OPPSTÅR SOM FØLGE AV BRUKEN AV, ELLER MANGLENDE EVNE TIL Å BRUKE, DETTE MICROSOFT-PRODUKT. DETTE GJELDER SELV OM MICROSOFT ER BLITT INFORMERT OM MULIGHETEN FOR SLIKE SKADER ELLER TAP. UNDER ENHVER OMSTENDIGHET ER MICROSOFTS FULLE ANSVAR I HENHOLD TIL SAMTLIGE AV DENNE AVTALES BESTEMMELSER BEGRENSET TIL DET BELØP SOM DE FAKTISK HAR BETALT FOR PROGRAMVAREN.

**FORBRUKERKJØP** — Denne avtale gjelder med de begrensninger som følger av kjøpslovens uravikelige bestemmelser i forbrukerkjøp, jfr. Lov av 13. mai 1988 nr. 27 om kjøp § 4.

For denne avtale gjelder norsk rett.

Hvis De har spørsmål vedrørende denne Avtale, eller hvis De ønsker å kontakte Microsoft av andre årsaker, bruker De adresseinformasjonen som følger med dette produktet for å kontakte Microsofts underkontor eller skriv til: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



**Si usted ha adquirido su producto Microsoft® en ESPAÑA, la presente garantía limitada le es de aplicación:**

**GARANTIA LIMITADA** — Microsoft garantiza que (a) durante un período de noventa (90) días a contar desde la fecha de recepción, el SOFTWARE funcionará sustancialmente de acuerdo con lo especificado en el/los manual(es) que acompañan al Producto; y (b) durante un período de un (1) año desde su recepción, cualquier pieza de hardware suministrada por Microsoft que acompañe al SOFTWARE y que sea utilizada en condiciones normales de uso y servicio no contendrá defectos materiales ni de fabricación. Cualquier garantía implícita del SOFTWARE y del hardware se limitará a noventa (90) días y a un (1) año, respectivamente.

**INDEMNIZACION AL USUARIO** — La responsabilidad total de Microsoft y su única indemnización consistirá, a elección de Microsoft, en: (a) el reembolso del precio pagado, o (b) la reparación o reemplazo del SOFTWARE o hardware que no cumpla con la Garantía Limitada de Microsoft y sea devuelta a Microsoft con copia de su recibo. Esta Garantía Limitada será nula si los defectos del SOFTWARE o del hardware son consecuencia de accidente, abuso o mal uso. Cualquier SOFTWARE reemplazado estará garantizado por el período de tiempo que resultase mayor entre el que reste hasta el vencimiento de la garantía original o un período de treinta (30) días.

**INEXISTENCIA DE OTRAS GARANTIAS** — MICROSOFT RECHAZA CUALESQUIERA OTRAS GARANTIAS, TANTO IMPLICITAS COMO EXPLICITAS, INCLUYENDO, PERO NO LIMITANDOSE A LAS GARANTIAS IMPLICITAS DE SER APTO PARA EL COMERCIO Y ADECUADO PARA UN FIN PARTICULAR, RESPECTO DEL SOFTWARE, EL/LOS MANUAL(ES) DEL PRODUCTO Y OTROS DOCUMENTOS ESCRITOS, ASI COMO CUALQUIER HARDWARE QUE LE ACOMPAÑE. ESTA GARANTIA LIMITADA LE OTORGA A USTED DERECHOS ESPECIFICOS.

**INEXISTENCIA DE RESPONSABILIDAD POR DAÑOS INDIRECTOS** — EN NINGUN CASO MICROSOFT O SUS PROVEEDORES SERAN RESPONSABLES DE CUALESQUIERA DAÑOS (INCLUYENDOSE, SIN LIMITE, LOS QUE DERIVEN DE PERDIDA DE BENEFICIOS, INTERRUPCION DEL NEGOCIO, PERDIDA DE INFORMACION COMERCIAL O CUALESQUIERA OTRAS PERDIDAS PECUNIARIAS) QUE SE ORIGINEN COMO CONSECUENCIA DEL USO O LA IMPOSIBILIDAD DE USO DE ESTE PRODUCTO MICROSOFT, INCLUSO EN EL SUPUESTO DE QUE MICROSOFT HAYA SIDO INFORMADO DE LA POSIBILIDAD DE QUE DICHOS DAÑOS SE ORIGINEN. EN CUALQUIER CASO, LA RESPONSABILIDAD DE MICROSOFT CON RESPECTO A CUALQUIER CLAUSULA DE ESTE CONTRATO SE LIMITA A LA CANTIDAD EFECTIVAMENTE PAGADA POR USTED POR EL SOFTWARE.

Este Contrato se regirá por las leyes españolas.

Si usted tiene alguna duda acerca de este Acuerdo o si desea contactar, por cualquier motivo, con Microsoft, utilice por favor la información con la dirección que se adjunta con este producto para contactar con su subsidiaria Microsoft o escriba a: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.



## Om Ni har förvärvat Er Microsoft®-produkt i SVERIGE, gäller följande begränsade garanti för Er:

**BEGRÄNSAD GARANTI** — Microsoft garanterar (a) att PROGRAMVARAN i allt väsentligt fungerar i enlighet med tillhörande produktmanual(er) för en period om 90 dagar från dagen för mottagandet; och (b) att av Microsoft som tillhör till PROGRAMVARAN levererad hårdvara är fri från material- och tillverkningsfel under normal användning och service under 1 år från den dag Ni mottagit produkterna. Varje garanti, uttrycklig eller implicit, avseende PROGRAMVARAN eller hårdvara är begränsad till 90 dagar respektive ett (1) år.

**KÖPARENS RÄTT ENLIGT GARANTIN** — Microsofts ansvar på grund av garantin är, efter Microsofts val, begränsad till antingen (a) återbetalning av köpeskillingen eller (b) reparation eller utbyte av den PROGRAMVARA eller hårdvara som inte uppfyller Microsofts begränsade garanti och som returnerats till Microsoft AB tillsammans med en kopia på ert kvitto. Garantin gäller ej om fel eller brist i PROGRAMVARAN eller hårdvaran beror på olyckshändelse, eller oriktig användning eller hantering. Utbytt PROGRAMVARA omfattas av en garantitid motsvarande för den utbytta varan återstående garantiperiod, dock minst 30 dagar.

**INGA YTTERLIGARE GARANTIER** — MICROSOFTS ANSVAR ÄR BEGRÄNSAT ENLIGT OVAN OCH MICROSOFT ÅTAR SIG INGET ANNAT GARANTIANSVAR, VARE SIG UTTRYCKLIGT ELLER IMPLICIT, AVSEENDE PRODUKTERNAS LÄMPLIGHET FÖR ETT SÄRSKILT ÄNDAMÅL, ELLER AVSEENDE PROGRAMVARAN, TILLHÖRANDE PRODUKTMANUAL(ER) OCH DET SKRIFTLIGA MATERIALET SAMT I FÖREKOMMANDE FALL TILLHÖRANDE HÅRDVARA.

**ANSVARSBEGRÄNSNING** — MICROSOFT ELLER DESS LEVERANTÖRER SVARAR ICKE FÖR SKADOR (INKLUSIVE, MEN UTAN BEGRÄNSNING TILL, UTEBLIVEN VINST, DRIFTSAVBROTT, FÖRLUST AV LAGRAD INFORMATION ELLER ANNAN EKONOMISK SKADA) TILL FÖLJD AV ANVÄNDNING ELLER FELAKTIG ANVÄNDNING AV DENNA MICROSOFT-PRODUKT. DETTA GÄLLER ÄVEN OM MICROSOFT HAR UPPMÄRKSAMMATS PÅ MÖJLIGHETERNA TILL SÅDANA SKADOR. MICROSOFTS TOTALA ANSVAR ENLIGT BESTÄMMELSERNA I DETTA AVTAL SKALL VIDARE ALLTID VARA BEGRÄNSAT TILL DEN FÖR PROGRAMVARAN ERLAGDA KÖPESKILLINGEN.

Svensk lag är tillämplig på detta avtal.

Om ni har frågor om detta licensavtal eller om ni behöver kontakta Microsoft i något annat ärende, kan ni använda den bifogade adressinformationen och kontakta Microsofts dotterbolag i ert land. Ni kan också kontakta Microsoft i USA på följande adress: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

**If you acquired your Microsoft® product in United States of America or ANY OTHER COUNTRY, the following limited warranty applies to you:**

**LIMITED WARRANTY** — Microsoft warrants that (a) the SOFTWARE will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying Product Manual(s) for a period of 90 days from the date of receipt; and (b) any Microsoft supplied hardware accompanying the SOFTWARE will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of one year from the date of receipt. Any implied warranties on the SOFTWARE and hardware are limited to 90 days and one (1) year, respectively.

**CUSTOMER REMEDIES** — Microsoft's entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at Microsoft's option, either (a) return of the price paid or (b) repair or replacement of the SOFTWARE or hardware that does not meet Microsoft's Limited Warranty and which is returned to Microsoft with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the SOFTWARE or hardware has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement SOFTWARE will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or 30 days, whichever is longer.

**NO OTHER WARRANTIES** — MICROSOFT DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT MANUAL(S) AND WRITTEN MATERIALS, AND ANY ACCOMPANYING HARDWARE. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS.

**NO LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES** — IN NO EVENT SHALL MICROSOFT OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MICROSOFT PRODUCT, EVEN IF MICROSOFT HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ANY CASE, MICROSOFT'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER ANY PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE SOFTWARE.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of Washington, U.S.A.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Microsoft for any reason, please write: Microsoft Customer Sales and Service, One Microsoft Way, Redmond, Washington 98052-6399.

Backup catalogs 46–48  
 Backup command, restoring files backed up with 202  
 Backup media 42  
 Backup sets 46  
 “Bad command or file name” message 13  
 “Bad or missing command interpreter” message 102  
 Basic language *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Qbasic command  
 BASIC or GWBASIC files, in the root directory 173  
 .BAT filename extension 36  
 Batch programs  
     *See also* MS-DOS Help for batch commands  
     commands used in 98–99, 231  
 Battery power, conserving on laptop computers 154–155  
 Baud rate, Interlnk connection 153  
 BBS *See* Bulletin board system  
 Bernoulli drive 170  
 BIOS replaced by a disk-partitioning program 184  
 Blindness and low vision, products and services for 236  
 Bold type, usage in this guide xvi  
 Boot Manager, OS/2 6–9  
 Boot sector virus, defined 63  
 Boot (startup) disk, creating 158  
 Brazilian keyboard, creating accented characters 246–247  
 Break command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Buffers command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Bulletin board system (BBS), obtaining new virus signatures 255–257  
 Busetup /e command 5  
 Bypassing startup commands  
     carrying out commands selectively 103  
     completely bypassing startup files 101–102  
     confirming each command 102–103  
     preventing bypass of commands 101

## C

Cables, connecting laptop computer to desktop computer 151  
 Call command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 “Cannot find a hard disk on your computer” message 168  
 Catalogs, backup 46–48  
 Cd command  
     *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
     changing directories 14, 16  
 CD-ROM drives, enabling *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Mscdex command  
 Character sets  
     alternate, specifying with the Keyb command 219  
     changing  
         example 216–217  
         loading a character set 211–212  
         loading the Nlsfunc program 211  
         making a character set active 212  
         overview of procedures 209  
         preparing an EGA, VGA, or LCD monitor 210  
     Character sets (*continued*)  
         .CPI files 208  
         described 207–209  
         hardware character set, defined 208  
         MS-DOS character sets  
             described 208–209  
             tables showing characters in 249–254  
             using instead of hardware character set 208  
         not supported by certain hardware devices 208  
         table of character set codes 215  
         troubleshooting (error messages)  
             “Code page not prepared for all devices” 219  
             “Code page operation not supported” 219  
             “Code page specified has not been prepared” 218  
             “Device error during prepare” 220  
             “Failure to access code page font file” 220  
             “Font file contents invalid” 220  
             “Invalid code page” 219  
             viewing information about 213–214  
     Chcp command  
         *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
         making a character set active 212  
         viewing information about character sets 213  
     Chdir command *See* Cd command  
     .CHK filename extension 115  
     Chkdsk command  
         *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
         checking disk space available for MS-DOS 163  
         using after running Microsoft Anti-Virus 79  
     Choice command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
     Clean start *See* Bypassing startup commands  
     Cleaning viruses from your computer *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus  
     Clearing the screen *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Cls command  
     Client computer, defined 149  
     Cls command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
     Clusters, recovering 80, 115–116  
     “Code page not prepared for all devices” message 219  
     “Code page operation not supported” message 219  
     “Code page specified has not been prepared” message 218  
     Code pages  
         *See also* Character sets  
         described 207–209  
     .COM filename extension 36  
     COMMAND.COM file  
         caution against deleting 113  
         specifying the path to 102  
     Command command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
     Command interpreter  
         *See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Command and Shell commands  
         “Bad or missing command interpreter” message 102



**Command prompt**

*See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Prompt command  
how to use 12  
illustrated 12

**Commands**

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

AUTOEXEC.BAT file, commands used in 98–99  
batch programs, commands used in 98–99, 231  
command prompt, how to use 12  
CONFIG.SYS file, commands used in 91–93, 231  
online Help for, how to use 37–40  
parameters, using with 20  
restrictions on using with Windows 231  
summary of commands 221–232  
switches, using with 15  
syntax, displaying 40  
typing at the command prompt 12  
wildcards, using with 36–37

[common] blocks in the CONFIG.SYS file 106

Compare command, Microsoft Backup 58–59

**Comparing files**

*See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Fc command  
after backing up 58–59

Comparing floppy disks *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Diskcomp command

Compatibility test, Microsoft Backup 53–55

Compressing drives *See* DriveSpace

CompuServe, Microsoft Forums available on xviii

**Computer viruses**

*See also* Microsoft Anti-Virus

cleaning from files 64, 66, 73–74  
described 62–63  
listing names and information about 68  
scanning for 63–67  
signatures

“Invalid Signature” message 75

obtaining updated signature files 255–257

VSafe, monitoring for virus activity 70

Computerized Books for the Blind *See* Recording for the Blind, Inc.

CONFIG environment variable 109

CONFIG.DAT file 158

**CONFIG.SYS file**

bypassing 101–102

commands used in

carrying out selectively 103  
changing order to optimize memory 128–130  
confirming each command 102–103  
determining the order of 95  
disabling to free memory 142  
listed 91–93, 231

**CONFIG.SYS file (continued)**

configuration blocks, creating 103–108

conventional memory, freeing 142–143

customizing for international use

character sets, loading 211–212

country-specific settings, changing 206

described 89

device drivers, installable 93–95

editing to configure your system 90–91

**MemMaker**

changes made by MemMaker 123, 125

preparing CONFIG.SYS file for 131

restoring CONFIG.SYS file after running 126

multiple configurations, creating 103–108

preparing for MS-DOS Setup 2

previous version on the Uninstall disk 158–159

samples of 96

startup menu, creating 105–106

streamlining 142–143

**troubleshooting**

by confirming each command 102–103

computer stops when running MemMaker 135

MS-DOS won't start 177–181

Configuration blocks in CONFIG.SYS file, creating 103–108

Configure Delete Protection command, Undelete 82

**Configuring Microsoft Backup**

Backup for MS-DOS 55–57

Backup for Windows 57–58

Configuring MS-DOS *See* Configuring your system

**Configuring your hard disk**

backing up files 185

extended MS-DOS partition

creating 194

deleting 190–191

formatting your hard disk 195

logical drives

creating 194

deleting 190

non-MS-DOS partitions, deleting 188–189

primary MS-DOS partition

creating 192–193

deleting 191–192

restoring files 195

starting the Fdisk program 186

**Configuring your system**

*See also* MemMaker; Memory management

AUTOEXEC.BAT file

carrying out commands selectively 103

commands used in 98–99

editing 97–98

multiple configurations, creating 109–110

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.



Configuring your system (*continued*)

## CONFIG.SYS file

- carrying out commands selectively 103
  - commands used in 91–93
  - configuration blocks, creating 103–108
  - confirming each command 102
  - device drivers, installing 93–95
  - editing 90
  - multiple configurations, creating 103–108
  - startup menu, creating 105–106
- described 89

## Confirming startup commands 102–103

## Connecting a laptop computer to a desktop computer

- breaking the connection 153
- copying Interlnk files by remote 153–154
- drive redirection, described 149–150
- establishing a connection 153
- Interlnk program, described 149–151
- requirements for using Interlnk 151
- setting up the client 151–152
- starting the server 152–153

## Control characters, typing 247–248

## Conventional memory

- See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Mem command
- described 118
- freeing enough to run MemMaker 140
- freeing for use by programs
  - See also* MemMaker
  - described 119–120, 143–144
- streamlining startup files 142–143

## Copy command

- See also* MS-DOS Help\*
- copying files 21–25

## Copying

- compressed files from the Setup disks 175
- disks *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Diskcopy command
- files 21–25
- Interlnk files, using remote copy program 153–154

## Countries

- changing country-specific settings 206
- codes for country-specific settings 215
- example of changing country-specific settings 216–217
- keyboard layout, changing 206–207
- Microsoft subsidiaries xx–xxv

## Country command

- See also* MS-DOS Help\*
- changing country-specific settings 206
- table of country codes 215

## COUNTRY.SYS file 206

## .CPI filename extension 208

Crosslinks *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Scandisk command

## CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination, restarting your computer 197

CTRL+C checking *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Break commandCtty command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

## Currency symbol

- changing country-specific settings 206
- table of country codes 215

## Current directory

- changing by using the Cd command 14, 16
- defined 32

## Current drive

- changing 19–20
- defined 20

## Cursor, defined 12

## Custom Setup, MemMaker 123–125

## Customer Sales and Service

- See also* Product Support Services
- AccessDOS, obtaining 235
- Dvorak keyboard layouts, obtaining 235
- telephone number 237
- text telephone (TT/TDD) service 233

Customer Support Services *See* Customer Sales and Service

## Customizing for international use

- changing country-specific settings 206
- character sets
  - alternate, specifying with the Keyb command 219
  - changing, overview of procedures 209
  - .CPI files 208
  - described 207–209
  - hardware character set, defined 208
  - loading into memory 211–212
  - making active 212
  - MS-DOS character sets, described 208–209
  - Nlsfunc program, loading 211
  - preparing an EGA, VGA, or LCD monitor 210
  - table of character set codes 215
  - viewing information about 213–214
- code pages *See herein* character sets
- codes for country-specific settings 215
- commands for changing settings, listed 232
- described 205
- example of changing country-specific settings 216–217
- keyboard layout
  - changing 206–207
  - diagrams of international layouts 239–246
- troubleshooting (error messages)
  - “Code page not prepared for all devices” 219
  - “Code page operation not supported” 219
  - “Code page specified has not been prepared” 218
  - “Device error during prepare” 220
  - “Failure to access code page font file” 220
  - “Font file contents invalid” 220
  - “Invalid code page” 219

## D

- Data verification, Microsoft Backup 48–49
- Date command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Date format
  - changing country-specific settings 206
  - table of country codes 215
- Deafness and hard-of-hearing, products and services supporting 233
- Debug command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Decompressing MS-DOS files on Setup disks 175
- DEFAULT.SET file 45
- Defrag command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - running the Microsoft Defragmenter 80
- Defragmenting files on a hard disk 80
- Del command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - deleting files 27–28
- Delete protection
  - configuring 81–82
  - disabling before running Setup 2
- “Delete-protection” message during MS-DOS Setup 167
- Delete Sentry 81, 86
- Delete Tracker 81
- Deleted files, recovering *See* Microsoft Undelete
- Deleting
  - directories 18
  - extended MS-DOS partition 190–191
  - files 27–29
  - logical drives 190
  - non-MS-DOS partitions 188–189
  - OLD\_DOS directories 3, 7
  - primary MS-DOS partition 191–192
  - unnecessary files, to free disk space 112–115
- Deloldos command, deleting OLD\_DOS directories 3, 7
- DELPURGE program 167
- Deltree command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- DELWATCH program, disabling 167
- Detecting viruses *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus
- Device command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - changed to Devicehigh by MemMaker 123, 125
  - installing device drivers, described 93
  - order of device drivers in CONFIG.SYS file 95
- Device drivers
  - described 93–95
  - included with MS-DOS, listed 94–95, 230
  - installing, described 93
- Device drivers (*continued*)
  - load order
    - changing to optimize memory 128–129
    - determining 95
  - starting your computer without loading 101–102
  - troubleshooting
    - by confirming commands in CONFIG.SYS file 102
    - computer stops when loading a device driver 137
    - device driver conflicts with MS-DOS 177–183
    - upper memory area, running in 123–125
- “Device error during prepare” message 220
- Devicehigh command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - added or modified by MemMaker 123, 125
  - order of device drivers in CONFIG.SYS file 95
  - restriction on using with certain device drivers 230
- Devices, installing drivers for 93
- Diagnosing disk errors *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Scandisk command
- Differential backup, described 43
- Dir command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - displaying a directory in wide format 15
  - displaying directory contents 13, 15
  - pausing a directory list 15
- Directories
  - backing up *See* Microsoft Backup
  - copying files to another directory 21–25
  - creating 16–18
  - current
    - changing 14, 16
    - defined 32
  - deleting
    - by using the Deltree command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
    - by using the Rd command 18
  - deleting files from 27–29
  - described 31–33
  - listing contents of 13, 15
  - naming 35–37
  - OLD\_DOS
    - deleting 3, 7
    - restoring a previous version of DOS 159
  - path to, specifying 34–35
  - recovering deleted directories 85
  - removing *See herein* deleting
  - root directory, defined 32
  - subdirectories, described 32
  - undeleting 85

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.

- Directory list
  - defined 13
  - pausing 15
  - viewing 15
  - wide format, displaying in 15
- Directory tree *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Tree command
- Disabilities, products and services supporting 233–237
- Disinfecting your computer *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus
- Disk caching
  - See also* SMARTDrive program
  - Bernoulli drive 170
  - disabling before running Setup 2
- Disk-compression programs
  - See also* DriveSpace
  - SuperStor 165
  - troubleshooting during MS-DOS Setup 164–166
- Disk drives *See* Drives
- Disk Manager disk partitions
  - restrictions on repartitioning with Fdisk 184
  - setting up MS-DOS on computers with 170
- Disk partitions
  - See also* Configuring your hard disk
  - Disk Manager 170
  - Everex 169
  - Novell 169
  - Priam 169
  - restrictions on repartitioning with Fdisk 184
  - SpeedStor Bootall 170
  - UNIX 169
  - Vfeature 169
  - XENIX 169
- Disk space
  - See also* DriveSpace
  - Delete Sentry hidden directory 86
  - displaying amount free *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Chkdsk and Dir commands
  - freeing
    - deleting unnecessary files 112–115
    - recovering lost clusters 115–116
  - insufficient
    - for installing Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete 173
    - for setting up MS-DOS 162–166
- Diskcomp command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Diskcopy command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Disks
  - See also* Disk space
  - comparing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Diskcomp command
  - compressing *See* DriveSpace
  - copying *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Diskcopy command
  - defragmenting files on a hard disk 80
  - described 33
  - formatting 29–30
- Disks (*continued*)
  - label
    - assigning when formatting disks 30
    - changing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Label command
    - repairing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Scandisk command
  - storage capacity, increasing 115–116
  - Supplemental *See* the coupon at the back of this guide
  - unformatting *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Unformat command
- DISPLAY.SYS device driver
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - loading 210
- “DMA buffer size too small” message 61
- DMDVR.BIN file 184
- Documentation on audio cassettes and floppy disks 236
- Dos command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - running MS-DOS in the high memory area 144, 145
- “DOS files in root directory” message 172
- Doskey command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Double period (..)
  - in directories, described 17
  - using to change directories 18
- Double-buffering 180
- Download Service, Microsoft (MSDL) xviii
- Drive A, using to create the Uninstall disk 3
- Drive letters
  - how to use 19
  - substituting *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Subst command
- DRIVER.SYS device driver *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Drives
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Lastdrive command
  - changing 19–20
  - compressing *See* DriveSpace
  - configuring for Microsoft Backup 55–58
  - current, defined 20
  - described 33
  - logical
    - creating 194
    - deleting 190
  - redirected by the Interlnk program 149–150
- DriveSpace
  - disk compression, described 265–267
  - memory, effect of DriveSpace on 275–276
  - online Help for 259
  - starting 268
  - tips on using 276
  - troubleshooting 277
  - using 267–275
- Drvspace command
  - See also* DriveSpace; MS-DOS Help\*
  - getting information about compressed drives 275



Drvspace command (*continued*)  
    getting online Help 259  
    mounting compressed floppy disks 274–275  
    setting up DriveSpace 260–262  
    starting DriveSpace 268  
Drivparm command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Dual-boot system with DOS, upgrading to MS-DOS 6–8  
Dvorak keyboard layouts 235–236

## E

ECC *See* Error correction code  
Echo command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Edit command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Editing files by using MS-DOS Editor *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
    for the Edit command  
EGA *See* Enhanced graphics adapter 205  
EGA.SYS device driver *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Emm386 command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
EMM386.EXE device driver  
    *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
    confirmation message not displayed when loading xv  
    double-buffering for compatibility with 180  
    freeing expanded memory 146–147  
    freeing extended memory 145  
    installing 147  
    order of device drivers in CONFIG.SYS file 95  
    troubleshooting 136, 177–178, 200  
“EMS page frame not found” message 127  
Enhanced graphics adapter (EGA)  
    freeing conventional memory by using  
        MemMaker 123, 127  
    using with MS-DOS character sets 210  
Environment variables  
    CONFIG 109  
    defining for multiple configurations 106  
    starting your system without setting 102  
    TEMP 112  
Erase command *See* Del command  
Error correction code (ECC), Microsoft Backup 49  
Error messages *See* Messages  
Errors in disks *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Scandisk  
    command  
ESDI (enhanced system device interface) 180  
EVDISK.SYS file 184  
Everex disk partitions  
    restrictions on repartitioning with Fdisk 184  
    setting up MS-DOS on computers with 169  
.EXE filename extension 36  
Exit command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Expand command  
    *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
    decompressing and copying Setup files 175  
EXPAND.EXE file 175  
Expanded memory  
    *See also* EMM386.EXE device driver  
    described 118  
    freeing for use by programs 145–146  
    simulating by using EMM386 memory manager 147  
“Expanded memory unavailable” message 127  
Expanding files *See* Decompressing files  
Express Setup, MemMaker 121–123  
Extended characters, typing 247–248  
Extended memory  
    *See also* HIMEM.SYS device driver  
    described 118  
    freeing for use by programs 144–145  
    HIMEM memory manager 146  
    running MS-DOS in the high memory area 143–144  
    simulating expanded memory by using 147  
    SMARTDrive, using to speed up your system 79  
Extended MS-DOS partition  
    creating 194  
    deleting 190–191  
Extensions *See* Filename extensions

## F

“Failure to access code page font file” message 220  
Fasthelp command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Fastopen command  
    *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
    freeing conventional memory by disabling 143  
FastTips, Microsoft xvii  
Fax numbers for Microsoft subsidiaries xx–xxv  
Fc command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Fcbs command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
Fdisk command  
    *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
    starting the Fdisk program 186  
Fdisk program  
    compressed vs. uncompressed drives 188  
    described 186  
    extended MS-DOS partition  
        creating 194  
        deleting 190  
    logical drives  
        creating 194  
        deleting 190–191  
    non-MS-DOS partitions, deleting 188–189

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.



Fdisk program (*continued*)  
     primary MS-DOS partition  
         creating 192–193  
         deleting 191–192  
     restrictions on using with certain types of partitions 184  
     starting 186

File attributes *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Attrib* command

File control blocks (FCBs) *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Fcb*s command

File infector virus, defined 63

File sharing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Share* command

File system errors *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Scandisk* command

“File was destroyed by the virus” message 75

Filename extensions  
     .BAT (batch file) 36  
     .CHK (Chkdsk command file) 115  
     .COM (program file) 36  
     copying files with common extensions 24–25  
     .CPI (character set information file) 208  
     deleting files with common extensions 27–29  
     defined 36  
     .EXE (program file) 36  
     renaming files with common extensions 26–27  
     .SYS (device driver) 36  
     .TXT (unformatted text file) 36  
     wildcards, using with 36–37

Filenames  
     *See also* Filename extensions  
     changing 25–27  
     conventions for 35–36  
     listing  
         directory contents 13  
         groups of files by using wildcards 24  
     wildcards in 36–37

Files  
     backing up *See* Microsoft Backup  
     copying 21–25  
     deleting 27–29  
     described 31  
     editing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Edit* command  
     listing  
         directory contents 13  
         groups of files by using wildcards 24  
     moving *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Move* command  
     naming 35–37  
     organizing in directories 31–33  
     path to, specifying 34–35  
     recovering deleted files *See* Microsoft Undelete  
     removing 27–29  
     renaming 25–27  
     replacing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Replace* command  
     restoring after backing up 59–61  
     sharing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Share* command

Files (*continued*)  
     viewing contents of *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Type* command

Files command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Find command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Finding deleted files 85

Finding lost clusters 80, 115–116

Finding text in MS-DOS Help 39

Floppy disk drives  
     360K or 720K Setup disks, ordering *See* the coupon at the back of this guide  
     configuring for Microsoft Backup 56–58

Floppy disks  
     comparing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Diskcomp* command  
     compressing 272–273  
     copying *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the *Diskcopy* command  
     described 33  
     formatting 29–30

“Font file contents invalid” message 220

For command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Format command  
     *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
     creating a startup disk before removing DOS files 172  
     formatting floppy disks 29–30  
     formatting your hard disk 195  
     transferring system files to a floppy disk 170–171

Formatting disks  
     floppy disks 29–30  
     hard disk 195

Fragmentation of files on a hard disk 80

Freeing disk space *See* Disk space; DriveSpace

Freeing memory *See* Memory management

Full backup, described 43

Full path, defined 35

## G

Goto command  
     *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
     creating multiple system configurations 109–110

Graphics command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

GW BASIC or BASIC files, in the root directory 173

## H

Handicaps, products and services supporting 233–237

Hard disk  
     *See also* Configuring your hard disk  
     backing up before repartitioning 185  
     compressing *See* DriveSpace  
     described 33  
     formatting after repartitioning 195

Hard disk (*continued*)

## messages

- “Cannot find hard disk” 168
- “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” 168
- “Incompatible partition” 170
- “Incompatible primary DOS partition” 168
- “Not enough space to install MS-DOS” 162
- “Too many primary partitions” 168

## speeding up

- using Microsoft Defragmenter 80
- using SMARTDrive 79

## HARDRIVE.SYS file 184

## Hardware character set, defined 208

## Hardware devices, configuring 93–95

Hardware interrupts *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Stacks command

## Hearing impairment, products and services supporting 233

## Help command, starting MS-DOS Help 38

## Help, online

- DriveSpace 259
- Microsoft Anti-Virus 63
- Microsoft Backup 42
- Microsoft Undelete 87
- MS-DOS Help, how to use 37–38
- MS-DOS Setup 3

Hidden files *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Attrib command

## High memory area (HMA)

- described 118
- running MS-DOS in 143–144

## HIMEM.SYS device driver

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

- confirmation message not displayed when loading xv
- installed by MS-DOS Setup 146
- new features xiv
- order of device drivers in CONFIG.SYS file 95
- running MS-DOS in the high memory area by using 144
- troubleshooting 197–200

HMA *See* High memory area

## I

## IBM PS/1, trouble starting MS-DOS 183

## If command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

- creating multiple configurations for your system 109

## Impaired hearing, motion, or vision 233–237

## Include command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

- creating multiple system configurations 106, 108

## “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” message 168

## “Incompatible partition” message 170

## “Incompatible primary DOS partition” message 168

## Incremental backup, described 43

## Infected files, cleaning 64, 66, 73–74

Install command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

## Installable device drivers

- Device commands in the CONFIG.SYS file 93
- included with MS-DOS 94–95, 230
- starting your system without loading 101–102

## Installing

- Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete 4–5
- device drivers 93–95
- MS-DOS *See* Upgrading to the new version of MS-DOS

Interactive start *See* Bypassing startup commands

## Interlnk command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

- establishing a connection between computers 153

## Interlnk program

- breaking the connection between computers 153
- described 149–151
- device driver for, installing 151
- drive redirection, described 149–150
- establishing a connection 153–154
- remote copy program 153
- requirements for using 151
- starting the server 152–153
- status, viewing 152

## INTERLNK.EXE device driver

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

- installing 151

## International Product Support Services xix–xxv

International settings *See* Customizing for international useInterrupts, hardware *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Stacks command

## Intersvr command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

- starting the Interlnk server 152

## “Invalid code page” message 219

## “Invalid Signature - Checksum does not match” message 75

## IO.SYS file

- caution against deleting 113
- on the Uninstall disk 159

## Iomega Bernoulli drive 170

## Italic, usage in this guide xvi

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.

## K

- Key combinations, format in this guide xvi
- Keyb command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - changing keyboard layout 206–207
  - viewing information about character sets 213
- KEYBOARD.SYS file 207
- Keyboards
  - Brazilian, creating accented characters on 246
  - character sets, viewing information about 213
  - characters not on the keyboard, typing 247–248
  - codes for international layouts 215
  - example of changing layout 216–217
  - key combinations for third character on each key 246
  - layout
    - changing 206–207
    - diagrams of international layouts 239–246
    - for individuals with motion disabilities 236
  - Switches command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
  - switching between country-specific layouts 207

## L

- Label command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Labeling disks when formatting 30
- Languages
  - See also* Customizing for international use
  - changing country-specific settings 206
  - codes for country-specific settings 215
  - keyboard layout, changing 206–207
- Laptop computer
  - Interlnk program
    - breaking the connection to the server 153
    - copying Interlnk files by remote 153
    - described 149–151
    - drive redirection, described 149–150
    - establishing a connection 153
    - installing the device driver for 151
    - requirements for using 151
  - Power program, conserving batter power 154–155
- Large-print documentation 236
- Lastdrive command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- LCD monitor, using with MS-DOS character sets 210
- Lh command *See* Loadhigh command
- Liquid crystal display (LCD) monitor, using with MS-DOS character sets 210
- Listing
  - directory contents 13
  - file contents *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Type command
  - files
    - all files in a directory 13
    - groups of files, by using wildcards 24
- Loadfix command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

- Loadhigh (Lh) command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - added or modified by MemMaker 123, 125
- Logical drives
  - creating 194
  - deleting 190
- Lost clusters, recovering 80, 115–116
- Low vision, products and services supporting 236

## M

- Machine numbers used with the HIMEM.SYS /machine switch 199–200
- Macros *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Doskey command
- Managing memory *See* Memory management
- Managing your system *See* Backing up files; Defragmenting files; Microsoft Anti-Virus; Microsoft Undelete; SMARTDrive program
- Manually installing MS-DOS 176
- Master catalog, Microsoft Backup 47
- MCA (microchannel architecture) 180
- Md (Mkdir) command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - creating directories 16–17
- Mem command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - memory configuration, identifying 117
- MemMaker
  - changes made to startup files 123, 125
  - changing options to free more memory 126–128
  - Custom Setup 123–125
  - EMM386, installing by using MemMaker 147
  - excluding conflicting memory addresses 200
  - Express Setup 121–123
  - freeing conventional vs. extended memory 120
  - multiple configurations, using with 131–134
  - optimizing memory, described 120
  - preparing to run 121
  - quitting 123, 125
  - running 121–125
  - troubleshooting while using MemMaker
    - See also* README.TXT online document
    - conservative settings, using 134–135
    - device drivers and TSRs, loading 137
    - EMM386, loading 135–136
    - memory, not enough to run MemMaker 140
    - upper memory area 138, 141
  - undoing changes after running 126
- Memmaker command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - running MemMaker 121, 124
  - undoing changes made by MemMaker 126
- MEMMAKER.STS file 128, 129



## Memory

*See also* MemMaker; Memory management; Memory managers

addresses, conflicting with EMM386 200

conventional, described 118

DriveSpace, effect on memory 275–276

expanded, described 118

extended, described 118

high memory area, described 118

“out-of-memory” messages 202–204

upper memory area, described 118

## Memory management

*See also* MemMaker; Memory managers

conventional memory, freeing

described 119–120

running MS-DOS in the high memory area 143–144

streamlining startup files 142–143

expanded memory

freeing 145–146

simulating 147

extended memory

freeing 144–145

providing access to 146

memory configuration, identifying 117–119

startup files, changing order of commands in 128–130

upper memory area, providing access to 147

## Memory managers

EMM386 147

HIMEM 146

troubleshooting

conflicting memory addresses 200

HIMEM doesn't load 197–200

## Memory-resident programs

load order, changing 128–130

starting from the AUTOEXEC.BAT file 99

starting your computer without running 177

troubleshooting 137, 138, 177–178

upper memory area, running in 123–125

## Menucolor command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

creating a startup menu 105–106

## Menudefault command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

creating a startup menu 105–106

## Menuitem command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

creating a startup menu 105–106

## Menus, startup 105–106

## Messages

“Bad command or file name” 13

“Bad or missing command interpreter” 102

Messages (*continued*)

“Cannot find a hard disk on your computer” 168

“Code page not prepared for all devices” 219

“Code page operation not supported” 219

“Code page specified has not been prepared” 218

“Device error during prepare” 220

“DMA buffer size too small” 61

“EMS page frame not found” 127

“Expanded memory unavailable” 127

“Failure to access code page font file” 220

“File was destroyed by the virus” 75

“Font file contents invalid” 220

“Incompatible hard disk or device driver” 168

“Incompatible partition” 170

“Incompatible primary DOS partition” 168

“Invalid code page” 219

“Invalid Signature - Checksum does not match” 75

“Not enough space to install MS-DOS” 162

“Not enough space to install selected programs” 173

“Not ready reading drive A” 19

“Out of memory” 202–204

“Program is trying to modify memory” 76

“Program is trying to stay resident in memory” 76

“Program is trying to write to disk” 76

“Resident programs were loaded after VSafe” 77

“Root directory contains DOS files” 172

“Since a virus was detected...” 77

“The xxxxxx virus is known to infect data files...” 77

“This is not the correct disk” 170

“Too many primary partitions” 168

“Verify Error” 74

“Virus Found” 73

“Your computer uses a delete-protection program” 167

“Your computer uses a disk-compression

program” 164, 166

“Your computer uses password protection” 167

“Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” 165

## Microchannel architecture (MCA) 180

## Microsoft Anti-Virus

*See also* VSafe

Anti-Virus for MS-DOS 63–65

Anti-Virus for Windows 65–67

Help (online), how to access 63

installing 4–5

messages

“File was destroyed by the virus” 75

“Invalid Signature - Checksum does not match” 75

“Program is trying to modify system memory” 76

“Program is trying to stay resident in memory” 76

“Program is trying to write to disk” 76

“Resident programs were loaded after VSafe” 77

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.



- Microsoft Anti-Virus (*continued*)
  - messages (*continued*)
    - “Since a virus was detected...” 77
    - “The xxxx virus is known to infect data files” 77
    - “Verify Error” 74
    - “Virus Found” 73
  - quitting after a virus is detected 77
  - removing viruses from your computer 65
  - scanning for viruses 63
  - starting 64, 65
  - startup command for Anti-Virus for Windows 67
  - troubleshooting while using Anti-Virus
    - computer stops 79
    - “out-of-memory” message 202
    - program doesn’t run after cleaning 78
    - reducing the number of messages 73
    - Windows won’t start 78
  - update, obtaining *See* the coupon at the back of this guide
  - virus names and information, listing 68–69
  - virus signatures, obtaining 255–257
- Microsoft Backup
  - backup catalogs 46–48
  - backup cycle, planning 44–45
  - Backup for MS-DOS
    - changing the configuration of 55–57
    - testing the configuration of 53–54
  - Backup for Windows
    - changing the configuration of 57–58
    - testing the configuration of 54
  - backup set, defined 46
  - comparing files 58–59
  - DEFAULT.SET file 45
  - error correction 49
  - Help (online), how to access 42
  - installing 4–5
  - master catalog, described 47
  - overview 42–43
  - restoring files 59–61
  - selecting files or directories to back up 51–53
  - setup files 45
  - starting 50
  - troubleshooting
    - “DMA buffer size too small” message 61
    - “Out-of-memory” message 202
  - types of backup, described 43
  - verifying backup data 48–49
- Microsoft Customer Sales and Service
  - See also* Microsoft Product Support Services
  - AccessDOS, obtaining 235
  - Dvorak keyboard layouts, obtaining 235
  - telephone number 237
  - text telephone (TT/TDD) service 233
- Microsoft Customer Support Services *See* Microsoft Customer Sales and Service
- Microsoft Defragmenter 80
- Microsoft Diagnostics program *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Msd command
- Microsoft Download Service (MSDL) xviii
- Microsoft FastTips xvii
- Microsoft Forums on CompuServe xviii
- Microsoft pay-as-you-go telephone support xviii
- Microsoft Product Support Services
  - outside the United States xix–xxv
  - text telephone (TT/TDD) service 233
  - within the United States xvii–xix
- Microsoft subsidiaries xx–xxv
- Microsoft Undelete
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Undelete command for MS-DOS
    - configuring delete protection 81
    - recovering deleted files 86–87
    - starting 87
  - for Windows
    - configuring delete protection 82
    - finding deleted files 85
    - purging Delete Sentry files 86
    - recovering deleted files 83
    - recovering deleted files on a network 85
    - recovering directories 85
    - starting 82, 86
  - Help (online), how to access 87
  - “out-of-memory” message, troubleshooting 202
  - setting up 4–5
- Microsoft Windows
  - Anti-Virus *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus
  - Backup *See* Microsoft Backup
  - memory, effect of running MemMaker on 120
  - restrictions on using MS-DOS commands while running 231
  - troubleshooting
    - HIMEM.SYS doesn’t load 197–200
    - MS-DOS–based applications, trouble running 127
    - system files infected by virus 78
  - Undelete *See* Microsoft Undelete
  - VSafe and VSafe Manager program 71–72
- Mkdir command *See* Md command
- Mode command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
    - loading a character set into memory 211–212
- More command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Motion impairment, products and services supporting 234
- Move command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Moving files *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Move command
- Msav command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
    - starting Microsoft Anti-Virus 64
- Msbakup command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
    - starting Microsoft Backup 50
- Mscdex command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Msd command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

MSDL *See* Microsoft Download Service

## MS-DOS

*See also* Troubleshooting; Upgrading to the new version of MS-DOS

basics *See* Tutorial for MS-DOS

configuring *See* Configuring your system

new features xii–xv

Product Support Services for xvii–xxv

running in the high memory area 143–144

MS-DOS–based applications, trouble running with

Windows 127

MS-DOS character sets

described 208–209

loading into memory 211–212

tables showing characters in 249–254

using instead of hardware character set 208

MS-DOS command prompt

how to use 12

illustrated 12

MS-DOS commands

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

summary of MS-DOS commands 221–232

using parameters with 20

using switches with 15

MS-DOS Editor *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Edit command

MS-DOS Help, how to use 37–40

MS-DOS partitions

extended

creating 194

deleting 190–191

primary

creating 192–193

deleting 191–193

MS-DOS Supplemental Disk, ordering *See* the coupon at the back of this guide

MS-DOS version number

setting for programs *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Setver command

viewing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Ver command

MSDOS.SYS file

caution against deleting 113

on the Uninstall disk 159

Multiple configurations

creating

branching code in AUTOEXEC.BAT file 109–110

configuration blocks in CONFIG.SYS file 103–108

MemMaker, using with 131–134

## N

Naming

directories 35–37

disks (labeling when formatting) 30

files 35–37

National Information System (NIS) 237

National language support (Nlsfunc program), loading 211

Network card, conflicting memory addresses 200

Network drives, limiting virus scanning to local drives 67

Networks

deleted files, recovering 85

startup files, order of commands in 128

NETWORKS.TXT online document xii

NIS *See* National Information System

Nlsfunc command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

loading national language support 211

Non-MS-DOS partitions, deleting 188–189

Norton Backup 49

“Not enough space to install MS-DOS” message 162

“Not enough space to install selected programs” message 173

“Not ready reading drive A” message 19

Novell disk partitions 169

Numlock command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

creating a startup menu 105

## O

OLD\_DOS directories

deleting 3, 7

restoring a previous version of DOS by using 159

Online documents xii

Online Help

DriveSpace 259

Microsoft Anti-Virus 63

Microsoft Backup 42

Microsoft Undelete 87

MS-DOS Help, how to use 37–40

MS-DOS Setup 3

Optimizing your system *See* Disk space; Memory management

OS/2, upgrading to MS-DOS

described 5

freeing disk space for setting up MS-DOS 163

if you don't have OS/2 Dual Boot or OS/2 Boot Manager 5–6

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.

OS/2, upgrading to MS-DOS (*continued*)  
 if you have OS/2 Boot Manager with DOS 6–8  
 if you have OS/2 Boot Manager without DOS 8–9  
 if you have OS/2 Dual Boot with DOS 6–8  
 removing OS/2 and saving data 6, 8, 9  
 “Out-of-memory” messages 202–204

## P

PACKING.LST file 175  
 Parameters, using with commands 20  
 Partitions  
   *See also* Configuring your hard disk  
   Disk Manager 170  
   Everex 169  
   messages  
     “Incompatible primary DOS partition” 168  
     “Too many primary partitions” 168  
   Novell 169  
   Priam 169  
   restrictions on repartitioning with Fdisk 184  
   SpeedStor Bootall 170  
   UNIX 169  
   Vfeature 169  
   XENIX 169  
 “Password-protection” message received during MS-DOS  
   Setup 167  
 Path  
   defined 34  
   full path, defined 35  
   how to specify 34–35  
   limit on length of 35  
   relative path, defined 35  
   substituting *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Subst command  
 Path command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Pause command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Pausing a directory list 15  
 Ports, redirected by the Interlnk program 152  
 Power command  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
   current power setting, displaying 155  
 Power program for laptop computers 154–155  
 POWER.EXE device driver  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
   installing 154  
 Previous version of DOS, restoring 159  
 Priam disk partitions  
   restrictions on repartitioning with Fdisk 184  
   setting up MS-DOS on computers with 169  
 Primary MS-DOS partition  
   creating 192–193  
   deleting 191–192  
 Print command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Printing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Print command  
 Product Support Services  
   outside the United States xix–xxv  
   text telephone (TT/TDD) service 233  
   within the United States xvii–xix  
 “Program is trying to modify system memory” message 76  
 “Program is trying to stay resident in memory” message 76  
 “Program is trying to write to disk” message 76  
 Prompt command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Prompting by MS-DOS to confirm CONFIG.SYS  
   commands 101  
 Protecting against viruses *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus  
 Publications on audio cassettes and floppy disks 236  
 Purge Delete Sentry File command, Microsoft Undelete 86

## Q

Qbasic command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Question mark (?)  
   using in the CONFIG.SYS file 101  
   wildcard, defined 37

## R

RAMDrive program  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\* for RAMDRIVE.SYS  
   using SMARTDrive program instead of 145  
 Rd (Rmdir) command  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
   deleting directories 18  
 README.TXT online document xii  
 Read-only files *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Attrib command  
 Recording for the Blind, Inc. (RFB) 236  
 Recovering deleted files *See* Microsoft Undelete  
 Recovering lost clusters 80, 115–116  
 Redirected drives, Interlnk program 149–150  
 Reduced hearing, motion, or vision 233  
 Relative path, defined 35  
 Rem command  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
   deleting after setting up MS-DOS 3  
   preparing startup files for the Setup program 2  
   troubleshooting your startup files by using 181  
 Removing  
   directories 18  
   DOS files from the root directory 172  
   extended MS-DOS partition 190–191  
   files 27–29  
   logical drives 190  
   non-MS-DOS partitions 188–189  
   previous version of DOS 3, 7  
   primary MS-DOS partition 191–192  
   unnecessary files, to free disk space 112–115



- Ren (Rename) command
    - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
      - renaming files 25–27
  - Rename command *See* Ren command
  - Renaming files 25–27
  - Repairing disk errors *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Scandisk command
  - Repartitioning *See* Configuring your hard disk
  - Replace command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
  - Replacing files *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Replace command
  - “Resident programs were loaded after VSafe” message 77
  - Restarting your computer
    - bypassing startup commands 101–102
    - CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination 197
    - specifying a different machine number 199–200
    - without running TSRs or device drivers 177–178
  - Restore command
    - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
      - restoring files backed up with the Backup command 202
  - Restoring
    - backed up files
      - after configuring your hard disk 195–196
      - backed up with Microsoft Backup 59–60
      - backed up with the Backup command 202
    - disks *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Unformat command
    - infected files
      - after cleaning 73
      - using a noninfected backup copy 78
    - previous version of DOS 159
  - RFB *See* Recording for the Blind, Inc.
  - Rmdir command *See* Rd command
  - Root directory
    - changing to 16
    - defined 32
    - DOS files detected by Setup 172
  - “Root directory contains DOS files” message 172
- ## S
- Scandisk command
    - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
      - freeing disk space 115–116
      - recovering lost clusters 115–116
  - Scanning for viruses *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus
  - Screen
    - clearing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the CIs command
    - unreadable Setup screens 162
  - SCSI (small computer system interface) 180
  - Search path *See* Path; MS-DOS Help\* for the Path command
  - Searching for text *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Find command
  - Searching MS-DOS Help 39
  - Serial number of disk *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Vol command
  - Serial number of product, where to find xix
  - Server, defined 149
  - Set command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
  - Setting up MS-DOS *See* Upgrading to the new version of MS-DOS
  - Setup command
    - upgrading from a version of DOS 3
    - upgrading from OS/2 to MS-DOS 7
  - Setup /e command 4
  - Setup /f command 158, 176
  - Setup /i command 161, 162
  - Setup /q command 176
  - Setup /u command 169
  - Setup disks, decompressing files on 175
  - Setup files, Microsoft Backup
    - DEFAULT.SET file 45
    - described 45
  - Setup program
    - See also* Upgrading to the new version of MS-DOS
    - 360K or 720K Setup disks, ordering *See* the coupon at the back of this guide
    - Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete, installing 4–5
    - conflicting programs, disabling 2
    - DriveSpace, setting up 260–263
    - Help, online 3
    - messages
      - “Cannot find hard disk” 168
      - “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” 168
      - “Incompatible partition” 170
      - “Incompatible primary partition” 168
      - “Not enough space to install MS-DOS” 162
      - “Root directory contains DOS files” 172
      - “Too many primary partitions” 168
      - “Your computer uses a disk-compression program” 164, 166
      - “Your computer uses an incompatible delete-protection program” 167
      - “Your computer uses password protection” 167
      - “Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” 165
    - restoring backed up files 195–196
    - running
      - upgrading from a previous version of DOS 3–4
      - upgrading from OS/2 to MS-DOS 5–9

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.



- Setup program (*continued*)
  - troubleshooting
    - decompressing and copying Setup files 175
    - manual installation 176
    - screens are unreadable 162
    - Setup repeatedly prompts for Uninstall disk 170–172
    - Setup stops before completing installation 160–162
- Setver command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- SETVER.EXE device driver *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Share command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Shell command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Shift command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Sight impairment, products and services supporting 236
- Signatures, virus
  - “Invalid Signature” message 75
  - obtaining updated signature files 255–257
  - “Since a virus was detected...” message 77
- Single-handed typing, keyboard layouts for 236
- Slash (/) in commands, defined 15
- SMARTDrive program
  - confirmation message not displayed when loading xv
  - new features xiv
  - speeding up your system by using 79
  - using instead of Fastopen program 143
  - using instead of RAMDrive program 145
- Smartdrv command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - added by MS-DOS Setup 79
- SMARTDRV.EXE device driver *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Sort command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Sort order, changing country-specific settings 206
- Speeding up your system
  - using SMARTDrive 79
  - using the Microsoft Defragmenter 80
- SpeedStor disk partitions
  - restrictions on repartitioning with Fdisk 184
  - SpeedStor Bootall partition 170
- SSTOR.SYS file 184
- Stacks command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Starting
  - Anti-Virus 64, 65
  - Backup 50
  - Defragmenter 80
  - DriveSpace 268
  - Interlnk server 152
  - Fdisk 186
  - MemMaker 121, 124
  - MS-DOS Help 37
  - MS-DOS, troubleshooting
    - conflicting TSR or device driver 177–183
    - HIMEM.SYS doesn’t load 197–200
    - specifying a different machine number 199–200
    - Uninstall disk, using to start MS-DOS 159
  - Undelete 82, 87
  - Starting (*continued*)
    - Windows, troubleshooting
      - HIMEM.SYS doesn’t load 197–200
      - system files infected by virus 78
    - your computer
      - bypassing startup commands 101–102
      - carrying out startup commands selectively 103
      - confirming startup commands 102–103
      - CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination, using 197
      - multiple configurations, using 103–110
- Startup disk for MS-DOS, creating 158
- Startup files
  - See also* AUTOEXEC.BAT file; CONFIG.SYS file
  - bypassing 101–102
  - changes made by MemMaker 123, 125
  - commands in
    - carrying out selectively 103
    - changing order to optimize memory 128–130
    - confirming each command 102–103
    - described 92–93, 98–99
  - multiple configurations
    - creating 109–110
    - using MemMaker with 131–134
  - preventing bypass of 101
  - streamlining to conserve memory 142–143
- Startup menu, creating 105–106
- Startup messages xvi
- Subdirectories
  - deleting
    - by using the Deltree command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
    - by using the Rd command 18
  - described 32
- Submenu command
  - See also* MS-DOS Help\*
  - creating a startup menu 105
- Subsidiaries, Microsoft xx–xxv
- Subst command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- SuperStor disk compression 165
- Supplemental Disk, ordering *See* coupon at back of guide
- Support Services for Microsoft products
  - for individuals with disabilities 233
  - outside the United States xix–xxv
  - within the United States xvii–xix
- Switches command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- Switches, using with commands 15
- Switching between programs while Interlnk is running 153
- Syntax of commands, displaying 40
- Syquest removable hard disk 169
- Sys command *See* MS-DOS Help\*
- .SYS filename extension 36
- System configuration
  - See also* Configuring your system; Memory management
  - memory configuration, identifying 117–119
- System files, on the Uninstall disk 159
- SYSTEM.INI file, restoring after running MemMaker 126

## T

Task swapping, disabled while Interlnk is running 153

TDD *See* Text telephone (TT/TDD) service

Technical support for Microsoft products xvii–xxv

Telephone numbers

bulletin board system (BBS) for virus signatures 255

CompuServe membership kit xviii

Microsoft Customer Sales and Service 237

Microsoft Download Service (MSDL) xviii

Microsoft FastTips xvii

Microsoft pay-as-you-go telephone support xviii

Microsoft Product Support Services in the U.S. xvii–xix

Microsoft subsidiaries outside the U.S. xx–xxv

National Information System (NIS) 237

Recording for the Blind, Inc. (RFB) 236

text telephone (TT/TDD) service 233

TEMP directory 112

TEMP environment variable 112

Temporary files, deleting 112

Testing executable files *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Debug command

Text files

editing *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Edit command

online documents xii

viewing contents of *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Type command

Text telephone (TT/TDD) service 233

“The xxxxx virus is known to infect data files” message 77

“This is not the correct disk” message 170

Time command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Time format

changing country-specific settings 206

table of country codes 215

“Too many primary partitions” message 168

Trace R&D Center 237

Trace ResourceBook 237

Transferring files between computers *See* Interlnk program

Tree command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Trojan horse virus, defined 63

Troubleshooting

AUTOEXEC.BAT file 178, 182

character sets (error messages)

“Code page not prepared for all devices” 219

“Code page operation not supported” 219

“Code page specified has not been prepared” 218

“Device error during prepare” 220

“Failure to access code page font file” 220

“Font file contents invalid” 220

“Invalid code page” 219

Troubleshooting (*continued*)

computer stops

bypassing startup files to restart computer 196

due to conflicting memory addresses 200–202

when using MemMaker 134, 138

when using Microsoft Anti-Virus 79

CONFIG.SYS file, confirming each command 102–103

DriveSpace 277

MemMaker

conservative settings, using 134–135

device drivers and TSRs, loading 137

EMM386, loading 135–136

memory, not enough to run MemMaker 140

upper memory area 138, 141

Microsoft Anti-Virus 73–79

Microsoft Backup 61

“out-of-memory” messages 202–204

Product Support Services xvii–xxv

restarting your computer 196–197

restoring backed up files 202

setting up MS-DOS

decompressing and copying Setup files 175

insufficient disk space for Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete 173–174

manual installation 176

Setup repeatedly prompts for Uninstall disk 170–172

Setup screens are unreadable 162

Setup stops before completing installation 160–162

startup disk, creating 158

Setup messages

“Cannot find hard disk” 168

“Incompatible hard disk or device driver” 168

“Incompatible partition” 170

“Incompatible primary DOS partition” 168

“Not enough space to install MS-DOS” 162

“Root directory contains DOS files” 172

“Too many primary partitions” 168

“Your computer uses a disk-compression program” 164, 166

“Your computer uses an incompatible delete-protection program” 167

“Your computer uses password protection” 167

“Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” 165

starting MS-DOS

HIMEM.SYS doesn’t load 197–200

MS-DOS won’t start after running Setup 177–184

specifying a different machine number 199–200

upper memory area 138, 141, 177

viruses *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.

Troubleshooting (*continued*)

## Windows

- HIMEM.SYS doesn't load 197–200
- MS-DOS–based applications, running with 127
- starting 78

TSR *See* Memory-resident programs

TT (text telephone) service 233

## Tutorial for MS-DOS

- changing directories (Cd) 14
- changing drives 19
- copying files 21–25
- creating directories 16–18
- deleting directories 18
- deleting files 27–29
- displaying a directory in wide format 15
- displaying directory contents 13, 15
- formatting floppy disks 29–30
- pausing a directory list 15
- renaming files 25–27
- typing commands 12
- wildcards
  - using to copy files 24–25
  - using to delete files 28–29
  - using to rename files 26–27

## .TXT filename extension

- online documents xii
- unformatted text files 36

Type command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

Typing with a single hand, keyboard layouts for 236

Typing with motion impairment, keyboard layouts for 235

Typographic conventions used in this guide xvi

## U

UMB *See* Upper memory blocks

Uncompressed drive, freeing disk space for setting up MS-DOS 164

## Undelete

*See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Undelete command for MS-DOS

- configuring delete protection 81
- recovering deleted files 86–87
- starting 87

## for Windows

- configuring delete protection 82
- finding deleted files 85
- purging Delete Sentry files 86
- recovering deleted files 83–85
- recovering deleted files on a network 85
- recovering directories 85
- starting 82

Help (online), how to access 89

installing 4–5

“out-of-memory” message, troubleshooting 202

## Undelete command

*See also* MS-DOS Help\*

Undelete for MS-DOS 81, 87

Undelete for Windows 82, 83, 85

Undelete To command, Microsoft Undelete 84

Undoing changes made by MemMaker 126

Unformat command *See* MS-DOS Help\*

## Uninstall disk

- creating in drive A 3
- preparing 2
- purpose of 158
- restoring a previous version of DOS 159
- restrictions on using 159
- Setup repeatedly prompts for 170
- starting MS-DOS by using 159
- using if Setup fails 161

UNIX disk partitions 169

Updating virus signatures 255–257

## Upgrading to the new version of MS-DOS

- 360K or 720K Setup disks, ordering *See* the coupon at the back of this guide
- from a previous version of DOS 1–5
- from OS/2

- described 5

- if you don't have OS/2 Dual Boot or OS/2 Boot Manager 5–6

- if you have OS/2 Boot Manager with DOS 6–8

- if you have OS/2 Boot Manager without DOS 8–9

- if you have OS/2 Dual Boot with DOS 6–8

- removing OS/2 and saving data 6, 8, 9

installing Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete 4–5

preparing for the Setup program 2

## Setup messages

- “Cannot find hard disk” 168

- “Incompatible hard disk or device driver” 168

- “Incompatible partition” 170

- “Incompatible primary partition” 168

- “Not enough space to install MS-DOS” 162

- “Root directory contains DOS files” 172

- “Too many primary partitions” 168

- “Your computer uses a disk-compression program” 164, 166

- “Your computer uses an incompatible delete-protection program” 167

- “Your computer uses password protection” 167

- “Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” 165

## troubleshooting

- decompressing and copying Setup files 175

- insufficient disk space for Anti-Virus, Backup, and Undelete 173–174

- manual installation 176

- Setup repeatedly prompts for Uninstall disk 170

- Setup screens are unreadable 162



Upgrading to the new version of MS-DOS (*continued*)  
   troubleshooting (*continued*)  
     Setup stops before completing installation 160  
     startup disk, creating 158

Upper memory  
   *See also* MemMaker  
   described 118  
   extended memory used by EMM386 to provide 145  
   optimizing memory, described 120  
   providing by installing EMM386 147  
   running programs in  
     by using MemMaker 123–125  
     load order, changing 128–130  
     troubleshooting 138, 141, 177  
 Upper memory blocks (UMBs), defined 118

## V

Ver command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Verify command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 “Verify Error” message 74  
 Verifying backup data 48–49  
 Version number *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Setver and Ver commands  
 Vfeature disk partitions 169  
 VGA *See* Video graphics adapter  
 Video graphics adapter (VGA)  
   freeing conventional memory by using  
     MemMaker 123, 127  
   using with MS-DOS character sets 210  
 “Virus Found” message 73  
 “Virus is known to infect data files...” message 77  
 Virus List command, Microsoft Anti-Virus 69  
 Viruses  
   *See also* Microsoft Anti-Virus  
   cleaning from files 64, 66, 73–74  
   described 62–63  
   listing names and information about 68–69  
   scanning for 63–67  
   signatures  
     “Invalid Signature” message 75  
     obtaining updated signature files 255–257  
   VSafe, monitoring your computer for virus activity 70–72  
 Vision impairment, products and services supporting 236  
 Vol command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 Volume label  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\* for the Vol command  
   specifying when formatting a disk 30

VSafe  
   monitoring your computer for virus activity 70–72  
   trouble using ALT+V key combination 78  
 Vsafe command  
   *See also* MS-DOS Help\*  
   starting the VSafe program 70  
 VSafe Manager program, setting up 71–72

## W

Wildcards  
   copying a group of files 24–25  
   defined 36–37  
   deleting a group of files 28–29  
   renaming a group of files 26–27  
 Windows  
   Anti-Virus *See* Microsoft Anti-Virus  
   Backup *See* Microsoft Backup  
   memory, effect of running MemMaker on 120  
   restrictions on using MS-DOS commands while  
     running 231  
   troubleshooting  
     HIMEM.SYS doesn’t load 197–200  
     MS-DOS–based applications, trouble running 127  
     system files infected by virus 78  
   Undelete *See* Microsoft Undelete  
   VSafe and VSafe Manager program 71–72  
 WIN.INI file, setting up the VSafe Manager program 71  
 Worldwide product support xix–xxv  
 Write protection  
   General Write Protect option, VSafe 76  
   Read-Only files *See* MS-DOS Help\* for the Attrib command

## X

Xcopy command *See* MS-DOS Help\*  
 XENIX disk partitions 169

## Y

“Your computer is using an incompatible delete-protection program” message 167  
 “Your computer uses a disk-compression program” message 164, 166  
 “Your computer uses password protection” message 167  
 “Your computer uses SuperStor disk compression” message 165  
 “Your computers does not have enough space for selected programs” message 173

---

\*You can start MS-DOS Help by typing **help** at the command prompt. To get help on a specific command, type **help** followed by the command name—for example, **help copy**.









---

# Microsoft MS-DOS Upgrade Low-Density (360K and 720K) Disk Offer

---

Your Microsoft® MS-DOS® Upgrade includes either 5.25" high-density (1.2 MB) disks or 3.5" high-density (1.44 MB) disks. If your system requires 5.25" or 3.5" low-density disks, please mark your preferred disk size, and send this order form to the address below. There is no charge for ordering low-density disks. *No photocopies or facsimiles of this order coupon will be accepted.*

*Preferred disk size (limit of one disk set per order):*

☐ 5.25" low-density disks (Kit No. 147-099-480)

☐ 3.5" low-density disks (Kit No. 147-095-480)

---

## Print your name, shipping address, and phone number:

Name

Company name

(if company licenses product)

Shipping address

City

State/Province

ZIP/Postal Code

Daytime phone (       )

(in case we have a question about your order)

---

## Send the completed order form to:

Microsoft MS-DOS Upgrade Disk Offer  
P. O. Box 3021  
Bothell, WA 98041-3021  
U.S.A.

**-OR-**

Microsoft Canada Order Centre  
P.O. Box 3030  
Malton Postal Station  
Mississauga, ON L4T 4C2  
Canada

If you have any questions about this offer, in the U.S. call Microsoft Sales Information Center at (800) 426-9400 or in Canada, call the Customer Support Centre at (800) 563-9048 before returning this coupon. Outside the United States and Canada, contact your local Microsoft subsidiary. If you require TDD/TT services for the deaf and hard of hearing, call (800) 892-5234 in the U.S. and (905) 568-9641 in Canada. Please allow 2 to 4 weeks for delivery upon receipt of this order by Microsoft. Offer good while supplies last. Offer good only in the 50 United States and Canada. This coupon is not transferable.

Microsoft and MS-DOS are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

NAS

---







---

# Microsoft® MS-DOS® Resource Kit and Supplemental Disks Offer

---

You can use this coupon to order the MS-DOS Resource Kit and the MS-DOS Supplemental disks. The Resource Kit contains the following:

- The *MS-DOS Technical Reference*, which includes a printed reference for all MS-DOS commands as well as technical information about MemMaker.
- The Supplemental disks, which include files and tools (see item 2 on the following page for disk contents). You can also order the Supplemental disks separately.

You can download the data on the Supplemental disks from the Microsoft Product Support Download Service (MSDL). To reach the MSDL, call (206) 936-6735 in the United States or (905) 507-3022 in Canada.

When you call the MSDL, use the following communications settings:

For this setting	Specify
Baud rate	1200, 2400, or 9600
Parity	none
Data bits	8
Stop bits	1

## How to order:

To order the Resource Kit or Supplemental disks, fill out the form on the following page and send it, with your MS-DOS registration card (if you haven't already sent it in), to the following address. **Offer limited to one Resource Kit or set of Supplemental disks per order.**

---

## Send the completed order form to:

Microsoft MS-DOS Disk Offer  
P.O. Box 3021  
Bothell, WA 98041-3021  
U.S.A.

—OR—

Microsoft Canada Order Centre  
P.O. Box 3030  
Malton Postal Station  
Mississauga, ON L4T 4C2  
Canada

**Microsoft®**

# Protect your PC against new viruses. Get two anti-virus updates for as little as \$9<sup>95</sup>\* each!

Microsoft® MS-DOS® includes a powerful virus protection program that detects and removes more than 800 viruses.

Unfortunately, new viruses appear frequently. That's why you need an ongoing plan to keep your data safe.

To keep your virus protection current, Microsoft is pleased to offer you two anti-virus software updates for as little as \$9.95 each. (Price for U.S. residents; see reverse side for prices in your country.)

Plus you'll also receive information about ongoing service plans. It's our way of making sure we take care of your data-protection needs today- and tomorrow.

To order your low-cost anti-virus update, just complete and send the attached coupon to the address for your country as indicated on the reverse side.

**Microsoft®**  
Making it easier

\*Price for U.S. residents only; other destinations additional. You must pay in the currency appropriate for your country. (See chart on reverse side for details.) Microsoft and MS-DOS are registered trademarks and Windows is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

## Virus Protection Update Order Form

Order your anti-virus update(s) now and save money! (See reverse side for your price.)

☐ **Yes! Please send me my anti-virus update(s).** I understand the first will ship now and the second will follow in 3-4 months. (Please allow 2-3 weeks for initial delivery.)

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Company \_\_\_\_\_ Department \_\_\_\_\_

Street Address \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_ Country \_\_\_\_\_

Zip Code/Postal Code \_\_\_\_\_

Daytime Phone \_\_\_\_\_ Fax \_\_\_\_\_

PC Make \_\_\_\_\_ Model \_\_\_\_\_

Choose one disk size: ☐ 5.25 inch 360K ☐ 3.5 inch 720K

Choose version: ☐ MS-DOS ☐ Windows™ **ENG**

**Please find your price on reverse side and enter below:**

☐ Price for One Update \_\_\_\_\_

☐ Price for Two Updates \_\_\_\_\_

Applicable Sales Tax\*\* \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_

☐ Sales Tax Number: (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_

### Payment Method:

☐ Check/Eurocheque/Money Order Enclosed

(Make checks payable to "Anti-Virus Update")

☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard ☐ EuroCard

☐ BankCard ☐ American Express

☐ P.O.# \_\_\_\_\_

Card #: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Exp. Date: | | - | | |

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*CA, CT, IL, MA, MD, MI, MN, NJ, NY, TX, VA, add applicable sales tax. Canadian buyers add applicable GST. Our GST code is 129820296.



# Anti-Virus Update Offer Price Chart

Prices below include shipping, handling, and local sales tax where applicable.

If resident of	Respond to	Pay in	Price (one/two updates)	Payment method accepted
United States	US	US\$	9.95/19.90	VISA, MC, AMEX, Personal Check
Canada	US	US\$	14.95/29.90	VISA, MC, AMEX, Personal Check (U.S. funds)
Germany	Germany	DM	39,00/70,00	VISA, MC, EuroCard, AMEX, Personal Check, Eurocheque
France	France	FF	139,90/279,80	VISA, MC, AMEX, Personal Check
UK	UK	£	14.95/29.90	VISA, MC, AMEX, Personal Check
Finland, Norway, Denmark, Sweden, Holland, Luxembourg, Belgium, Spain, Portugal, Greece, Ireland	UK	£	14.95*/29.90* (See approx. local currency equiv. below)	VISA, MC, EuroCard, AMEX, Eurocheque
Italy	Italy	Lira	37,000/75,000	VISA, Personal Check, Eurocheque
Austria	Germany	AS	279/500	VISA, MC, EuroCard, AMEX, Eurocheque
Switzerland	Switzerland	SF	37,90/68	VISA, MC, EuroCard, AMEX, Eurocheque
Eastern Europe	Germany	DM	39,00/70	Eurocheque
Australia, New Zealand, Asia/Pacific	Australia	US\$	33.90/67.80	VISA, MC, BankCard, Money Order, Personal Check (Checks accepted from Australia and New Zealand only)
South America, Central America, Mexico	US	US\$	14.95/29.90	VISA, MC, AMEX, Money Order
Africa, Middle East (except Israel)	UK	£	13.90/25	VISA, MC, EuroCard, AMEX, Eurocheque, Money Order
Israel	Israel	IS	35.00/60.00	VISA, MC, Personal Check

Please send your order to the address for your country as listed below:

## UNITED STATES

AV Update  
15220 Greenbrier Parkway #200  
Beaverton, OR 97006-9937 • USA  
Or fax credit orders to: 800-626-2778

## UNITED KINGDOM

AV Update  
P.O. Box 15 • Twyford • Reading  
Berkshire RG10 9LZ • U.K.

## MIDDLE EAST

AV Update  
P.O. Box 52244  
Dubai  
United Arab Emirates

## FRANCE

AV Update  
1, Rond-Point de l'Europe  
92257 La Garenne Colombes Cedex  
France

## AUSTRALIA

AV Update  
P.O. Box 660 • Brookvale • NSW 2100  
Australia

## ITALY

AV Update  
Via Vittorio Veneto 24  
20124 Milano • Italy

## GERMANY

AV Update  
Hoferstr. 1/II • P.O. Box 83 01 49  
D-W-8000 Munich 83 • Germany

## SWITZERLAND

AV Update  
Lebrigstrasse • CH-8583 Goetighofen  
Switzerland

## ISRAEL

AV Update  
P.O. Box 25055 • Haifa 31250  
Israel

The following shows the approximate equivalent of £14.95 in your currency at press time:

Finland	Norway	DK	Sweden	Holland	LUX	Belgium	Spain	Portugal	Greece	Ireland
115 Fm.	145 Nk.	135 Dk.	135 SK	40 Fl.	745 LF.	750 Bf.	2,600 Ptas	3,200 Esc.	4,650 Dr.	13.50 Punt.

\*As of January 1, 1993, we are required to charge European Community customers VAT, which is currently 17.5%. You may exclude this charge if you are registered for sales tax (e.g. VAT, TVA, MOMS, FPA, IVA, BTW) and you supply your sales tax reference number on the order form. Residents of Finland, Sweden and Norway may also exclude VAT. If you exclude VAT, enter the price £12.72/25.46 on the order form.

25271-174-0790435



**Microsoft®**